

TRÚC LINH

Theo
chương trình
tiếng Anh mới
của Bộ GD & ĐT

BỘ ĐỀ LUYỆN THI HỌC KỲ I

TIẾNG ANH

- Theo chương trình chuẩn của **BỘ GIÁO DỤC & ĐÀO TẠO**
- Đầy đủ kiến thức: Từ vựng – Ngữ âm – Ngữ pháp
- Nội dung chi tiết, rõ ràng, dễ hiểu, hấp dẫn



TRÚC LINH

**BỘ ĐỀ LUYỆN THI HỌC KỲ I
MÔN TIẾNG ANH 9**

CHƯƠNG TRÌNH MỚI

UNIT 1 LOCAL ENVIRONMENT

A. Vocabulary:

1. artisan	/ɑ:ˈzæn/ (n.):	thợ làm nghề thủ công
2. handicraft	/ˈhændikra:ft/ (n.):	sản phẩm thủ công
3. workshop	/ˈwɜ:kʃɒp/ (n.):	xưởng, công xưởng
4. attraction	/əˈtrækʃn/ (n.):	điểm hấp dẫn
5. preserve	/prɪˈzɜ:v/ (v.):	bảo tồn, gìn giữ
6. authenticity	/ɔ:θenˈtɪsəti/ (n.):	tính xác thực, chân thật
7. cast	/kɑ:st/ (v.):	đúc (đồng...)
8. craft	/kra:ft/ (n.):	nghề thủ công
9. craftsman	/ˈkra:ftsmən/ (n.):	thợ làm đồ thủ công
10. team-building	/ˈti:m bɪldɪŋ/ (n.):	xây dựng đội ngũ, tinh thần đồng đội
11. drumhead	/drʌmhed/ (n.):	mặt trống
12. embroider	/ɪmˈbrɔɪdə(r)/ (v.):	thêu
13. frame	/freɪm/ (n.):	khung
14. lacquerware	/ˈlækəweə(r)/ (n.):	đồ sơn mài
15. layer	/ˈleɪə(r)/ (n.):	lớp (lá...)
16. mould	/məʊld/ (v.):	đổ khuôn, tạo khuôn
17. sculpture	/ˈskʌlptʃə(r)/ (n.):	điêu khắc, đồ điêu khắc
18. surface	/ˈsɜ:fɪs/ (n.):	bề mặt
19. thread	/θred/ (n.):	chỉ, sợi
20. weave	/wi:v/ (v.):	đan (rổ, rá...), dệt (vải...)
21. turn up	/tɜ:n ʌp/ (phr. v.):	xuất hiện, đến
22. set off	/set ɒf/ (phr. v.):	khởi hành, bắt đầu chuyến đi
23. close down	/kləʊz daʊn/ (phr. v.):	đóng cửa, ngừng hoạt động
24. pass down	/pɑ:s daʊn/ (phr. v.):	truyền lại (cho thế hệ sau...)
25. face up to	/feɪs ʌp tu/ (phr. v.):	đối mặt, giải quyết
26. turn down	/tɜ:n daʊn/ (phr. v.):	từ chối
27. set up	/set ʌp/ (phr. v.):	thành lập, tạo dựng
28. take over	/teɪk əʊvə/ (phr. v.):	tiếp quản, kế nhiệm, nối nghiệp
29. live on	/lɪv ɒn/ (phr. v.):	sống bằng, sống dựa vào
30. treat	/tri:t/ (v.):	xử lý
31. carve	/kɑ:v/ (v.):	chạm, khắc
32. stage	/steɪdʒ/ (n.):	bước, giai đoạn
33. artefact	/ˈɑ:tɪfækt/ (n.):	đồ tạo tác
34. loom	/lu:m/ (n.):	khung cửi dệt vải
35. versatile	/ˈvɜ:sətaɪl/ (adj.):	nhiều tác dụng, đa năng
36. willow	/ˈwɪləʊ/ (n.):	cây liễu
37. charcoal	/ˈtʃɑ:kəʊl/ (n.):	chì, chì than (để vẽ)
38. numerous	/ˈnju:mərəs/ (adj.):	nhiều, đông đảo, số lượng lớn

B. Grammar:

I. Complex sentences

1. Định nghĩa

Định nghĩa: - Câu phức là câu bao gồm 1 mệnh đề độc lập (independent clause) và ít nhất 1 mệnh đề phụ thuộc (dependent clause) liên kết với nhau. Hai mệnh đề thường được nối với nhau bởi dấu phẩy hoặc các liên từ phụ thuộc (subordinating conjunctions).

Ví dụ: He always takes time to play with his daughter **even though** he is

Mệnh đề độc lập

extremely busy.

Mệnh đề phụ thuộc

Even though he is busy, he always takes time to play with his daughter.

Mệnh đề phụ thuộc

Mệnh đề độc lập

(Mặc dù anh ấy bận rộn, nhưng anh ấy luôn dành thời gian để chơi với con gái) You should think about money saving from now if you want to study abroad.

Mệnh đề độc lập

Mệnh đề phụ thuộc

- Mệnh đề đi liền với liên từ trong câu phức chính là mệnh đề phụ thuộc.

- Mệnh đề phụ thuộc nằm phía trước mệnh đề độc lập, thì giữa hai mệnh đề phải có

Dấu phẩy còn lại thì không.

2. Một số liên từ phụ thuộc phổ biến.

After (Sau khi)	Although (Mặc dù)	As (Bởi vì/ khi)	as If (Như thể là)	As long as (Miễn là)	In order to (Để mà)
Before (Trước khi)	Even If (Mặc dù)	Because (Bởi vì)	as though (Như thể là)	as much as	so that (Để mà)
Once (Một khi)	Even though (Mặc dù)	Whereas (Trong khi đó)	If (Nếu)	as soon as (Ngay khi)	Unless (Trừ khi)
Since (Từ khi/ Bởi vì)	Though (Mặc dù)	While (Trong khi đó)	In case (Nếu)	When (Khi)	Until (Cho đến khi)

3. Các loại mệnh đề phụ thuộc hay gặp.

Trong câu phức có nhiều loại mệnh đề phụ thuộc khác nhau, dưới đây là một vài VD thường gặp.

Mệnh đề phụ thuộc	Ví dụ
Mệnh đề phụ thuộc chỉ lý do (d Trả lời cho câu hỏi “Why” (tại sao) - Thường bắt đầu với các liên từ như: because, since, as....	I needn't tell you as he has told you already. I did it because there was no one else to do it. - Since you in
- Mệnh đề phụ thuộc chỉ thời gian: - Nói về hành động trong mệnh đề độc lập diễn ra khi nào. - Thường bắt đầu với các liên từ như: When, While, before, after, as soon as....	- As I went out, he came in - As soon as you are ready, we shall go - I hurried to see him after I had heard the news. - I hope to pay him a visit before I went away.
- Mệnh đề phụ thuộc chỉ mục đích. - Nói về mục đích của hành động trong mệnh đề độc lập. - Thường bắt đầu với các liên từ như: so that, in order to that...	- Though it is getting late, I think we have to finish our lesson. - Although it rained, we went out all the same. - I'll get there even If I have to walk all the day. - I'll get there even If I have to walk all the day.
	He was speaking very quietly so that it was difficult to hear what he said.

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng:

1. My mother used to tell me stories _____ I went to bed.
A. since B. until C. before
2. You better take the keys _____ I'm not out.
A. in case B. since C. after
3. My mother like eating fried chicken _____ it's very bad for his health.
A. because B. although C. when
4. Yesterday, Jim was playing the piano _____ his sister was playing the flute

- A.as B.although C.while
- 5.You shouldn't spend too much on computer _____ it is harmful to your eyes.
A.as B.when C.although
- 6.I will phone you _____ I get there.
A.while B.as soon as C.until
- 7.The scientist usually works in his lab _____ the sun sets.
A.until B.as soon as C.although
- 8._____ you promise not to tell lies again, I won't forgive you.
A.If B.Even If C.Unless
- 9._____ her legs were hurt, she made attempt to finish the running track.
A.Even If B.As if C.Unless
- 10.She talked _____ she witnessed the accident. But in fact she knew nothing.
A.as if B.even though C.even If
- 11.I didn't finish my home work _____ I was seriously ill yesterday.
A.when B.though C.since
- 12.James decided to save money from now _____ he has enough money to travel this summer
A.so that B.though C.when
- 13._____ we have been friends for only one year, we deeply understand each other.
A.If B.Though C.Once
14. Mr Smith doesn't like dogs, _____ his wife love them.
A. B. C.
- 15.I was cycling home yesterday _____ I saw Jim standing near the fountain.
A.when B.while C.since

Bài 2: Hoàn thành những câu sau đây bằng những liên từ cho sẵn.

since	although	while	unless	before
as though	when	as long as	because	in case

1. _____ Jim came home, he realized that someone had broken into his house
- 2.You'd better bring your raincoat _____ rain pour down.
- 3.They have been colleagues _____ they graduated.
4. _____ Tim put more effort in his studying, he won't catch up with his classmates.
- 5.My mother always reminds me to wash my hands _____ I have meals.
- 6.We will go picnicking _____ the weather is fine.
- 7.James behaved _____ nothing had happened.
- 8.I can't make it on Saturday _____ I will be fully occupied.
- 9.When I got home my father was moving the lawn _____ my mother was watering the flowers beds.
10. _____ I don't get on well with Mary, I really admire her intelligence and beauty.

Bài 3: Nối những mệnh đề ở cột A với những mệnh đề ở cột B để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

A	B
1.Jane didn't realize her mistakes	a.when snow started to fall
2.They were playing in the backyard	b.though it is distant from our house
3.If you show your attempt in your work,	c.before they move here.
4.This couple had been in New York City for two years.	d.I still travel by public transportations
5.My mother often shops at the local supermarket.	e,so that I will have decent job in the future
6.It has been ages	f,you may get promotion soon
7.I try to study hard	g.until her mother pointed it out for her
8.Even If own a car	h.since we last encountered

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____

5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

Bài 4: Nối 2 câu đơn đã cho thành câu ghép, sử dụng liên từ thích hợp.

1. Jim was absent from class yesterday. He was suffering from a bad cold.
.....
2. They decided to move the house. They don't have to travel a long distance to work.
.....
3. Mary heard her fingers yesterday. She was repairing dinner.
.....
4. At 4 pm yesterday, my mother was cleaning the house. I was looking after my younger brother.
.....
5. They decided to go on an excursion. They want to get away from work stress.
.....
6. My father taught me how to use the computer. Before that, I didn't know how to use it.
.....
7. I arrive at the station. I will call you right after.
.....
8. My brother is very out-going. I am quiet reserved.
.....
9. Mr Peter was walking home. He was robbed of his wallet.
.....
10. I don't have a pet. My mother doesn't allow me to have one.
.....

Bài 5: Điền liên từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống để hoàn thành các câu sau.

1. _____ it's pouring with rain, we are going for a walk in the park.
2. _____ she hands in the assignment before Tuesday, she will get very bad mark.
3. He decided to break up with Peter _____ he didn't spend much time with her.
4. Jennifer decided to break up with Peter _____ he didn't spend much time with her.
5. Danny bought a new car _____ his old car was still in good condition.
6. I will be in great trouble _____ my mother knows my final test scores.
7. Janice will have finished the report _____ the time you receive the letter
8. The concert will be canceled _____ no more tickets are sold.
9. Children are not allowed to enter this place _____ they are accompanied by adults.
10. You should bring thick coats _____ the temperature falls at night.
11. _____ my sister doesn't like eating salad, she eats it regularly to keep fit.
12. I won't come to Jim's party _____ he invites me.
13. _____ you tell me the truth, I can't help you.
14. _____ the fire fighters arrived, the fire had already been put out by the local residents.
15. You can leave early _____ you want to.

II. PHRASAL VERBS

1. Định nghĩa

Định nghĩa	Ví dụ
<p>Cụm động từ (Phrasal verb) là sự kết hợp giữa một động từ và một tiểu từ(particle)</p> <p>-Tiểu từ có thể là một trạng từ, hay là một giới từ, hoặc là cả hai chẳng hạn như: <i>back, in, on, off, through, up...</i></p> <p>- Khi thêm tiểu từ vào sau động từ, cụm động từ thường có ý nghĩa khác hẳn so với từ ban đầu.</p>	<p>-The rich man gave away most of his fortune. (Người giàu có ấy tặng hết tài sản của ông ta cho người nghèo).</p> <p>You can look up any new words in your dictionary. (Anh có thể tra nghĩa bất cứ từ mới nào trong từ điển.)</p> <p>I tried to phone her but I didn't get through (Tôi đã cố gắng gọi cho cô ấy nhưng không thể nào kết nối được)</p>

2. Ý nghĩa phổ biến của các các tiểu từ trong các cụm động từ.

Một tiểu từ có thể truyền tải nhiều ý nghĩa khác nhau trong mỗi cụm động từ khác nhau. Tuy nhiên dưới đây là các tiểu từ thường được dùng trong các cụm động từ.

Tiểu từ	Ý nghĩa	Ví dụ
up	Diễn đạt vị trí hướng lên trên hoặc ý kết thúc, hoàn thành tất cả.	We ate all the food up (Chúng tôi ăn hết thức ăn đó rồi)
down	Diễn đạt vị trí hướng xuống dưới, hoặc hành động có xu thế giảm/ chặn lại	We have to cut down the expenses (Chúng ta sẽ phải cắt giảm chi tiêu)
on	Diễn đạt ý ở trên, dựa trên	We should put on formal clothes in a meeting. (Cậu nên mặc lịch sự trong cuộc họp)
in	Diễn đạt ý ở trong, xu hướng đi vào trong.	Make sure to leave the office by 5:00 or you will be locked in. (Nhớ là phải rời khỏi văn phòng lúc 5 giờ nếu không anh sẽ bị kẹt trong đó)
out	Diễn đạt vị trí phía ngoài hoặc ý hành động đến tận cuối / cạn kiệt.	I couldn't figure him out (Tôi không thể nào hiểu nổi anh ấy)
off	Diễn tả ý dời đi chỗ khác hoặc đổi trạng thái.	I've sent off the letter you wrote to the newspaper (Tôi đã gửi bức thư mà anh viết cho báo chí rồi)
for	Diễn đạt mục đích hướng tới của hành động.	He often asks his father for money (Anh ấy vẫn thường xuyên hỏi xin tiền bố mẹ)
with	Diễn đạt ý có người hoặc vật cùng tham gia trong hành động.	That skirt goes really well with our red coat. (Chiếc váy đó rất hợp tông với chiếc áo khoác đỏ của bạn)
through	Diễn đạt ý lần lượt cái này sang cái khác, hoặc từ đầu đến cuối,	If you look through something, you read it quickly and not very carefully. (Khi bạn đọc qua cái gì đó nghĩa là bạn đọc nhanh không quá cẩn thận)
back	Diễn đạt ý trở lại, quay lại	Please send the jacket back If it is the wrong size (Hãy gửi lại chiếc áo khoác nếu như sai cỡ)
away	Diễn đạt trạng thái rời đi hoặc tạo ra khoảng cách.	Put away your toys, Jack (Cất đồ chơi đi Jack)
around	Diễn đạt hành động mang tính giải trí, không rõ mục đích, hoặc không cần quá tập trung.	I hate the way he lies around all day watching TV (Tôi ghét cái cách anh ấy cứ nằm vắt vẻo xem TV cả ngày).

3. Một số cụm động từ thường gặp:

Cụm động từ kết hợp với một tiểu từ.

Get up (Thức dậy)	Find out (Tìm hiểu thông tin)	bring out: = publish : xuất bản
pass down: (chuyển giao)	Live on (sống nhờ vào)	look through (đọc)
Deal with (giải quyết)	Warm up (Khởi động)	Come back (quay trở lại)
turn down (phản đối, từ chối)	Set up (khởi nghiệp, sắp đặt)	Keep up (tiếp tục)
Take off (máy bay cất cánh)	Show off (khoe khoang)	Hold on (Chờ đợi)
Give up (từ bỏ)	Grow up (lớn lên)	Go on (tiếp tục)

Break down (đổ vỡ, hư hỏng)	Carry out (thực hiện)	Count on (tin cậy vào)
Dress up (mặc đẹp)	Drop by (ghé qua)	Bring up (nuôi dưỡng)
Work out (tìm ra cách giải quyết)	Close down (đóng cửa, ngừng kinh doanh)	Take up (Bắt đầu làm một hoạt động mới)

Cụm động từ kết hợp hai tiểu từ:

Keep up with sb/sth	Look forward to sb/sth	Run out of sth
Get out of sb/sth	Catch up with sb/sth	Come down with sth
Cut down on sth	Look back on sth	Get rid of sth
Make up for sb/sth	Get back at sb	Go along with sb
Look down on sb	Look up to sb	Stay away from sb/sth
Pull over at	Run away /off from sb/sth	Wait up for sth
Keep out of sb/sth	Go in for sth	Go through with sth
Face p to sth	Get on with sb	Come up with sth
Check up on sth	Make sure of sth	

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 6: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng:

- 1.They have turned (down / up) Jim's application for the job.
- 2.You may have to deal(with / about) many problem in the workplace.
- 3.Small birds mainly live (on/off) insects.
- 4.When does the plane take (off/ up) ?
- 5.Why did you decide to take (on/up) skiing ?
- 6.Remember to warm (up/down) carefully before you play sports.
- 7.There's no need to dress (up / down). It is just an informal party.
- 8.Have you work (out / in) the solution yet ?
- 9.Oops, I think we're run out (of/on) petrol.
- 10.Jim seems not to get (on/off) well with his classmates.
- 11.My husband has decided to set (up/down) a business on his own.
- 12.Do you think Jame will find (out/ up) the truth ?
- 13.Does Jim have many friends to count (on/off) in difficult time ?
- 14.Yesterday, my uncle dropped (to/by)my house to the surprise of everyone.
- 15.Were you brought (up/in) by your grandparents ?

Bài 7: Điền một từ thích hợp để hoàn thành các câu dưới đây:

- 1.James is quite easy- going. He can _____ on well with many types of people.
- 2.Peter has been absent from school for two weeks due to his illness. It may be difficult for him to _____ up with his classmates.
- 3.Did you watch the film last night? Do you know how the villain _____ back on the hero ?
- 4.Mr Smith decided to _____ up smoking because the doctor warned him of getting lung cancer.
- 5.He could _____ with all kinds of people because it was part of his job as a receptionist.
- 6.Jim was sad because Jane _____ down his invitation to the prom.
- 7.It is important to _____ down on sugar consumption every day.
- 8.It's time you have to _____ up to these problems on your own.
- 9.I _____ forward to hearing from you soon.
- 10.Sometimes I _____ back on my childhood and realize how happy I was as a kid.

Bài 8: Đánh dấu (V) trước câu đúng, đánh dấu (x) trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng.

1. _____ We have already worked up a new way of doing it.
2. _____ Jim wants to be a successful writer when he grows out.

- _____ 3. We are looking forward to hearing from you soon.
- _____ 4. You can keep up to all the changes in technology nowadays.
- _____ 5. The nearby shop will be closed up next month.
- _____ 6. The team scored another goal and made sure about
championship.
- _____ 7. Last year a research on the consequences of water pollution was carried on.
- _____ 8. Jim has come up with a brilliant idea to tackle the problem.
- _____ 9. Have you ever considered getting rid your bad habits ?
- _____ 10. The teacher asked us to see through the textbook before she continued.

Bài 9: Hoàn thành các câu sau bằng những cụm động từ cho sẵn.

cut down on	deal with	hold on	take up	count on
put up with	turn down	come down with	bring out	check up on

1. The singer will _____ a new album this year.
2. Peter is very reliable. You can _____ him.
3. You should _____ your essay _____ 500 words.
4. Jim is depressed as he has been _____ by five companies so far.
5. I can't _____ such disturbing noise any time.
6. My mother is always _____ me.
7. Mr. Smith has _____ golf.
8. Are you tired of _____ complaints from your customers.
9. How are you now ? I heard that you _____ flu last week.
10. _____ ! I think we've got lost. This isn't the right road.

BÀI TẬP NÂNG CAO TỔNG HỢP.

Bài 10: Dựa vào từ cho trước và thêm liên từ thích hợp để tạo thành câu phức.

1. Jane / play / piano / extremely / well / she / be / very / young.
.....
2. Josh / want / earn / more / money / he / apply / for / another / job / now.
.....
3. My mother / cook / me / breakfast / she / go / to / work.
.....
4. I / prefer / stay / home / to / go / out / I / not / like / socialize.
.....
5. Everyone / enjoy / the / party / last / night / food / be / not / so / good.
.....
6. Jim / could / not / catch / up / with / his / classmates / he / often / play / truant.
.....
7. Peter / study / very / hard. He / can / get / high / scores.
.....
8. Many / of / my friends / enjoy / go / shopping / I / not / like / this.
.....

Bài 11: Thay thế những động từ in nghiêng trong câu bằng một cụm động từ thích hợp.

1.I don't like Josh because he often boasts <i>about</i> his wealth.	_____
2.Last month many people in my neighbor <i>had</i> chickenpox.	_____
3.you should <i>reduce</i> the amount you salt in your daily meal.	_____
4.It's you <i>confronted</i> your fear and moved on.	_____
5.Yesterday an old friend of mine <i>visited</i> your family.	_____
6.Mary decided to <i>join</i> the cooking contest.	_____
7.I didn't want to go with him, so I <i>rejected</i> his invitation.	_____
8.They are a well- matched couple and they always <i>agree</i> with each other.	_____
9.When did you <i>start</i> your new hobby ?	_____
10.The rain <i>continued</i> all the morning.	_____

Bài 12. Hoàn thành các câu dưới đây bằng cách điền từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống.

- 1.Peter always look _____ his senior colleagues.
- 2.Mary is going _____ a singing competition.
- 3.Nothing can make _____ the loss of my cat.
- 4.Jim didn't work yesterday because he came _____ flu.
- 5.My mother always reminds me to stay _____ bad people.
- 6.As a child I used to wait _____ the present from Santa Clause.
- 7.I can't put _____ his selfishness any more.
- 8.They argue a lot. They seem to never get _____ each other.
- 9.Last year she went _____ an operation.
- 10.Last week we got _____ all the old furniture and bought new one.

Bài 13: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong câu và viết lại câu đúng.

- 1.Although she didn't warm up carefully before running, her leg was hurt during the race.

- 2.Everyone dressed up though they wanted to be the King or Queen of the prom.

- 3.Since I am really interested in lacquerware, I rarely buy one for me.

- 4.As though my brother and I don't get on well, we still care about the other.

- 5.What would you do unless you won a lottery?

- 6.Mr.Smith is renowned artisan.Everyone looks down on him.

- 7.While I came home, my cat was sleeping on the sofa.

- 8.Because Peter cheated on me, I wouldn't get back on him.

Bài 14: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng:

A trip to Bat Trang

Last month,my English class went on a field trip to one of the most ancient villages in Viet Nam: Bat Trang. That day all of us got (1)_____ very early (2)_____ we could arrive at the village early in the morning. When we got there, we were all astonished by a variety of ceramic products, most of which are for ordinary use such as bowl, cup, plates and pot.(3)_____ there were up to twenty members in our class, we decided not to join the buffalo tour. Instead, we took a walk for sightseeing and shopping around. (4)_____ we had visited some of the ceramic stores along the road in the village ,our teacher took us to Bat Trang Porcelain and Pottery Market. This was the most interesting part of our trip. The local people instructed us to make pottery products by themselves and introduced the tradition of the village. We were

told that pottery-making skills were (5) _____ from generation in the village.(6) _____ we left,the locals gave us small ceramic key chains as souvenirs. We really looked (7) _____ another trip to Bat Trang.

1.A.up	B.down	C.on	D.off
2.A.so	B.so that	C.since	D.though
3.A.so	B.so that	C.since	D.though
4.A.After	B.Because	C.At last	D.While
5.A.turned down	B.went in for	C.passed down	D.brought out
6.A.After	B.Before	C.At last	D.While
7.A.up to	B.down on	C.forward to	D.forward on

Bài 15: Đọc bài đọc sau và trả lời câu hỏi.

Vietnam's Youngest Artisan

Nguyen Tran Hiep, born in Northern province of Bac Ninh, has become the youngest artist of Vietnam at the age of 37. He succeeded in developing a large-scale fine-art furniture workshop thanks to an extensive renovation and considerable investment. Before achieving all this,he had gone through with many difficulties in his work.

In 2000, Nguyen Tran Hiep established his own fine-art wood carving workshop, using all of his family's savings and a loan from Bac Ninh province's Youth Union after he had learned about the craft from a famous artisan. Unfortunately,his products could not reach a wide range of customers. At that time,many other people in the village also failed to earn a decent living on making craft and they decided to quit their tradition job. People found jobs and made money many other ways but Hiep didn't give up his dream of developing the tradition craft into a profitable business. He is spending the next years learning and researching the market to find out the most suitable markets for his products. He targeted two types of customers:the firstis foreign tourists and the second is traders from China.

For the tourists, his workshop mainly produces small handicrafts and souvenirs, such as small animals, painting, tea trays, figurines and rasaries. For the Chinese cilents, his workshop makes products to order based on the current sample designs.At present,his workshop renamed Hiep Thang Fine arts Cooperative, provides stable jobs for 28 employees with an average income of 4-10 million dong/month.

One of Nguyen Tran Hiep's best works is " Bat Long vong quang phat" which originated from the idea of the eight kings of the Ly dynasty incarnating into eight dragons on a five-colour lotus tower.This work was made to celebrate the 80th anniversary of the founding of the Ho Chi Minh Communist Youth Union and has been listed in the Vietnamest Record Book in 2011 as the best fine-art sculpture of ideology and art.

1.When was Nguyen Tran Hiep recognized as the Vietnam's Youngest Artisan?

2.Did he easily succeed in developing his fine-art furniture workshop?

3.How did Hiep categorize his customers?

4.What kinds of products does his workshop often produce for foreigners?

5.How many employes are there in Hiep Thang Fine arts Cooperative?

6.What was made by Nguyen Tran Hiep to celebrate the 80th anniversary of the founding of the Ho Chi Minh Communist Youth Union?

C. EXERCISES

TEST 1 (UNIT 1)

I.Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>l</u> ayer | B. <u>f</u> rame | C. <u>a</u> rtisan | D. <u>p</u> lace |
| 2. A. <u>m</u> useum | B. <u>c</u> ultural | C. <u>d</u> rum | D. <u>s</u> culpture |

3. A. tablecloth B. authenticity C. through D. although

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

4. A. artefact B. embroider C. carpentry D. conical
5. A. complicated B. experience C. prosperity D. traditional

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. In the past, local _____ were chosen to make sophisticated embroidered costumes for the Vietnamese King, Queen and other Royal family members.
A. skill workers B. skillfully works C. skillful artists D. skilled artisans
7. Craft villages are becoming popular _____ in Viet Nam.
A. tourism attractions B. tourist attractions
C. tour attractiveness D. physical attraction
8. Situated on the bank of the Duong River, the village was famous for the _____ of making Dong Ho paintings.
A. craft B. production C. manufacture D. activity
9. Vietnamese traditional _____ is done with a simple hammer and chisel.
A. sculptural pieces B. sculpture C. sculptured feature D. sculptor
10. Now, at the age of over 80, the artisan is leaving the craft to his descendants with a desire to _____ this ancient craft.
A. preserve B. reserve C. change D. consider
11. For that artisan, making the paintings is a career _____ it supports the life of many generations of the family.
A. so that B. because C. because of D. although
12. The Van Phuc producers silk have expanded their silk garment goods _____ they can satisfy the varied demand for their silk.
A. in order to B. despite C. because D. so that
13. Weaving mats in Dinh Yen, Dong Thap used to be sold in the "ghost" markets set up at night and operated up to early morning _____ the government built a new market five years ago.
A. when B. until C. after D. as soon as
14. The traditional craft has _____ from generation to generation.
A. passed down B. passed C. been passed down D. been passed by
15. Craftsmen have to _____ the domestic and international markets so that they needn't depend on the middlemen for their sales.
A. find B. find about C. find out D. find out about

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

<i>materials</i>	<i>individual</i>	<i>respects</i>	<i>craft</i>
<i>tasks</i>	<i>handicrafts</i>	<i>attractions</i>	<i>master</i>

For generations throughout history, the Vietnamese people gathered in communal villages surrounded by the rice fields. However, many farmers also learned to produce useful (1) _____ for their daily lives from clay, bamboo, and other natural (2) _____. A number of villages developed a certain (3) _____ for the local market or to bring into local towns or capital cities for sale. This was the origin of the Vietnamese handicraft trade villages.

These craft villages have undergone periods of varying success and failure throughout the 20th century. Some craft villages have developed and preserved their best skills and designs. In the craft village hall, the trade villagers often worship and periodically pay their (4) _____ to the sacred craft (5) _____ of handicraft, who has exploits in founding, teaching or preserving the particular designs that the villages produce.

V. Make a complex sentence from each pair of sentences. Use the subordinator provided and make any necessary changes.

1. Viet Nam's current labor costs are lower compared to other countries. It brings advantages to both medium and small handicraft manufacturers. (**since**)

2. Giang got the loans from the project. Then he opened a small enterprise of ceramics. (**when**)

3. Green Craft has a lot of difficulties. It continually works to improve its productivity, designs and samples. (**although**)

4. The government carried out a job training programme in rural areas. The government wanted young people to find jobs in their own villages. (**so that**)

5. Some heads of the businesses had problems to find markets. They have not been trained in management. (**for**)

VI. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one, using the word given in brackets in the correct form.

1. The traditional handicraft villages used to accept the fact that there was a shortage of investments and human resources. (**face**)

2. Farmers can earn enough money from traditional handicrafts as they are free between harvests. (**live**)

3. People in the community often have a friendly relationship with one another so that they can follow the same craft. (**get**)

4. In the future, some traditional handicraft cooperatives will have no more wood to make wooden furniture. (**run**)

5. After the trip, you return to the harbor to take a boat trip to Hoi An. (**come**)

VII. Make a complex sentence from each pair of sentences. Use the subordinator provided and make any necessary changes.

1. Many craft families stopped their business. There is the economic crisis in the world. (**because**)

2. Dong Ho paintings are simple. These pictures reflect a typical characteristic of Vietnamese labourers, (**although**)

3. Three villages were chosen for the pilot project. The Asia Foundation had worked with local authorities. (**after**)

4. We do not have many handicraft products that are well-known abroad. There are thousands of craft trades nationwide. (**though**)

5. The craft village must also meet environmental requirements. It wants to develop craft village tourism. (**so that**)

6. Viet Nam began integrating into the international economy a few decades ago. Production in craft villages developed strongly, meeting demand for domestic decoration, and construction. (**when**)

7. At the age of over 80, the artisan is instructing the craft to his grandchildren. He wants them to preserve this ancient craft. (**so that**)
8. The workers have taken several steps to whiten the palm leaves. They sew together the leaves and the rings. (**after**)
9. The conical hat has several useful functions. It protects the wearer's head and face from sunlight or rain, and it also works as a handy fan on hot summer days. (**because**)
10.
Local people in Thanh Ha pottery village near Hoi An continue following their craft. There isn't enough support for maintaining the old traditions and skills. (**although**)

VIII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Bau Truc pottery village of Cham ethnic minority is one of the oldest pottery villages in Southeast Asia. It is located about 10 kilometres in the South of Phan Rang town. The small village is (1)_____ to more than 400 families, (2) 85% are in the traditional pottery business. The style is said to be handed (3)_____ from Po Klong Chan, one of their ancestors from the immemorial time.

People in Bau Truc use their skillful hands, bamboo-made _____ circles and shells to create priceless works. It is (4)_____ that while the Kinh people have switched to using wheel as an indispensable (5)_____, their Cham counterparts, on the contrary, still (6)_____ talent hands and simple tools. To create a pottery product, a Cham craftsman only needs an anvil, not a potter's wheel, and other simple equipment and moulds and then uses hands to (7)_____ pieces of clay into the works he wants.

The clay is taken from the banks of the Quao River and is very flexible, durable when (8)_____. The skills needed to mix sand with the clay are also various. The amount of sand mixed with the plastic material is dependent on what the pottery used for and the sizes. For these reasons, Bau Truc pottery is quite different from pottery elsewhere. For example, water jars made in Bau Truc are always favoured by people in dry and sunny areas (9)_____ the temperature of the water in the jars is always one centigrade cooler than (10)_____ outside.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. house | B. home | C. housing | D. household |
| 2. A. which | B. about which | C. for which | D. of which |
| 3. A. down | B. up | C. in | D. to |
| 4. A. surprise | B. surprised | C. surprising | D. surprisingly |
| 5. A. equipment | B. tool | C. machine | D. instruments |
| 6. A. rely on | B. result in | C. base on | D. succeed in |
| 7. A. develop | B. shape | C. influence | D. decide |
| 8. A. heating | B. heating up | C. be fired | D. being fired |
| 9. A. so that | B. although | C. so | D. because |
| 10. A. it | B. what | C. that | D. this |

IX. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Recently, we made a trip to visit Dong Ho village with a desire to meet the old artisan – Nguyen Huu Sam. Just when we arrived villagers at the dyke in the village and talked with the villagers about the artisan, they immediately told us about him.

The old house owned by the artisan is situated in a long alley of the village. On the walls of the house there are many folk paintings in different genres, from daily life paintings to landscape paintings shown in a set of “four seasons”.

Mr. Sam told us about his past. When he was three years old, he was instructed in the craft of making Dong Ho paintings by his father. At five, he could help his father apply the Dong Ho paintings, and learn how to print the paper with proper colours. At seven, he was able to draw with a pen and make the most

difficult samples. Years went by and the soul of Dong Ho folk paintings has kept seashell powder paint to the poonah-paper.

In the 1940s, this craft flourished. At that time, he was assigned by his parents to take the paintings to the market for sale. Mr. Sam said that 17 families in the village have been engaged in making Dong Ho paintings.

Artisan Sam has always been devoted to the making of Dong Ho paintings and has waited for opportunities to restore this traditional craft. In 1967, when the local authorities assigned him to restore the traditional genre of Dong Ho folk paintings, he gathered 50 villagers with professional skills and collected hundreds of woodblocks to establish the Dong Ho Painting Cooperative. Thanks to his efforts, such famous painting as "Rat's wedding", "Rooster", "Scene of jealousy" and "Writing verses about precious flowers" have been revived. Dong Ho paintings have been available in many parts of the world such as Japan, France, Germany, Singapore and the United States.

1. The themes of Dong Ho paintings are about _____.
A. landscapes B. weddings C. various aspects of life D. animals and flowers
2. In order to make Dong Ho paintings, we need seashell powder paint, the poonah-paper and _____.
A. proper colours B. water C. markets D. woodblocks
3. From paragraph 3, we can infer that when Mr. Sam was very young, he mostly helped his parents by _____.
A. applying the woodblocks with proper paints and pressing them on sheets of paper
B. applying seashell powder to make various paints for painting making
C. drawing with a pen and using proper paints to make many copies of paintings
D. collecting and taking the paintings to the market for sale
4. All of the following can be inferred about the artisan - Mr. Sam – EXCEPT that _____.
A. he is popular in the village
B. he could paint when he was three
C. he keeps a collection of Dong Ho paintings in his house
D. the local authorities tried to revive the traditional genre
5. In the writer's opinions, the future of Dong Ho paintings is _____.
A. international B. concerning C. optimistic
D. negative

X. Write an email to your pen friend about Van Phuc silk village, using the words or phrases below to make complete sentences. Add more words, if necessary.

Dear Susan,

1. It/ take/ you/ only 30 minutes/ motorbike/ go/ Van Phuc silk village/ centre/ Ha Noi.

2. The village/ much well known/ traditional sericulture/ weaving/ silk products.

3. Most visitors/ go/ observe/ skillful workers/ produce/ goods/ listen/ local stories.

4. If/ you/ intend/ have/ silk pair/ formal clothes/ just select/ suitable materials/ and/ professional tailors here/ bring/ satisfaction.

5. You/ buy/ silk/ clothes made of silk/ presents/ available/ village/ your choice.

Look forward to seeing you soon!

Best wishes

TEST 2 (UNIT 1)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. attr <u>a</u> ction | B. surf <u>a</u> ce | C. lac <u>a</u> querware | D. art <u>i</u> san |
| 2. A. w <u>e</u> ave | B. t <u>r</u> eat | C. d <u>e</u> al | D. drumh <u>e</u> ad |
| 3. A. sculp <u>t</u> ure | B. lan <u>t</u> ern | C. pot <u>t</u> ery | D. t <u>r</u> eat |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

4. A. handicraft B. lacquerware C. artisan D. pottery
5. A. historical B. embroidery C. authority D. architecture

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. The four-ton statue of hero Tran Vu, _____ in 1667, still stands in Quan Thanh Temple.
A. cast B. casting C. to cast D. to be vast
7. In 1990, due to the change of the economic situation, Dong Ho paintings were difficult to sell and many _____ quit their job.
A. craftsmanship B. craft unions C. craftsmen D. crafts
8. Making rice paper _____ jobs and income for many locals, help many families out of poverty and become well-off.
A. keeps B. gets C. applies for D. creates
9. Since changing the way of production, many craftsmen have voluntarily joined together to form _____.
A. cooperates B. cooperation C. cooperatives D. cooperative
10. The artisan is delighted to _____ to you the craft of creating prints in an old-age style.
A. demonstrate B. explain C. express D. provide
11. _____ a majority of Vietnamese small and medium enterprises do not have in-house designers or specialized design staff, they have to hire freelance designers.
A. While B. Since C. Due to D. Despite the fact
12. _____ a large number of the country's craft villages are suffering from a shortage of human resources and difficulties in building brand recognition, many international organizations have had projects to help them.
A. However B. But C. Even D. Although
13. Nowadays, Tan Chau artisans can produce silk of multiple colours _____ they can meet customers' demands.
A. so B. so that C. but D. in order
14. The bronze casting craft in Viet Nam dated back from the age of King An Duong Vuong _____.
_____ ancient bronze arrowheads were made.
A. because B. although C. so D. when
15. In 1990, due to the change of the economic situation, many Dong Ho cooperatives had to _____.
A. close B. close in C. close down D. shut

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

<i>handicrafts</i>	<i>design</i>	<i>quality</i>	<i>return</i>
<i>costumes</i>	<i>skills</i>	<i>appearance</i>	<i>history</i>

There are many embroidery villages in Viet Nam, but Quat Dong village in Ha Noi is widely known for its products of high (1)_____.

Embroidery has been developing around here since the 17th century. In the past, local skilled artisans were chosen to make sophisticated embroidered (2)_____ for the Vietnamese King, Queen and other Royal family members.

The first man who taught the local people how to embroider was Dr. Le Cong Hanh, who lived during the Le dynasty. He learned how to embroider while on a trip to China as an envoy, and taught the villagers of Quat Dong upon his (3)_____. Although these (4)_____ eventually spread across the country, the Quat Dong's artisans' creations are still the most appreciated.

In order to create beautiful embroideries, an artisan must be patient, careful and have an eye for (5)_____, along with clever hands. Nowadays, Quat Dong products may range from clothes, bags, pillowcases, to paintings and decorations, which are exported to many countries.

V. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one, using the word given in brackets in the correct form.

1. Labourers in the Mekong Delta can earn enough money from their crafts during the flood seasons. **(live)**

2. The methods of producing handcrafted paper flowers in Thanh Tien village in Hue were transferred from generation to generation to keep the craft alive. **(pass)**

3. The tour guide gave a short speech so that foreign visitors could get information about the process of making fish sauce in Phu Quoc. **(find)**

4. Craft village development is now a good way to solve the poverty in rural areas. **(deal)**

5. We are thinking with pleasure about the trip in order to discover the traditional craft villages round Hue. **(forward)**

VI. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Sedge Mat Craft Village In Tien Giang Province

In the Mekong Delta, Long Dinh village of Tien Giang province is famous for its traditional craft of weaving flowered mats. The mat's high quality makes them popular domestically, and they are also exported to markets worldwide including Korea, Japan and America.

In spite of its well-established reputation for this traditional craft, mat weaving only started here some 50 years ago. It was first introduced by immigrants from Kim Son, a famous mat weaving village in the northern province of Ninh Binh. However, the technique of weaving sedge mats in Long Dinh, as compared with other places in the South, is somewhat different. Long Dinh branded mats are thicker and have more attractive colours and patterns.

Weaving sedge mats is similar to growing rice. Long Dinh mat production mainly occurs during the dry season, from January to April. Weavers have to work their hardest in May and June, otherwise, when the rainy season starts in July, they will have to put off finishing their products till the next dry season. No matter how much work it requires, Long Dinh mat producers stick with this occupation, as it brings a higher income than growing rice.

This trade provides employment for thousands of local labourers. At present, nearly 1,000 households in Long Dinh village live on weaving mats. To better meet market demands, Long Dinh mat weavers have created more products in addition to the traditional sedge mats. Particularly, they are producing a new type of mat made from the dried stalks of water hyacinth, a common material in the Mekong Delta.

Thanks to the planning and further investment, the mat weaving occupation has indeed brought in more income for local residents. Their living standards have improved considerably, resulting in better conditions for the whole village.

1. All of the following are true about the craft in Long Dinh EXCEPT that _____.
 - A. it has the origin from Kim Son, Ninh Binh
 - B. it has had the reputation for more than 50 years
 - C. the techniques are a little bit different from those in other regions
 - D. the mats have more attractive colours and designs
2. We can infer from the sentence "Weaving sedge mats is similar growing rice" that _____.
 - A. both depend on weather conditions
 - B. both occur on the same land
 - C. both bring similar income
 - D. both occur at the same time
3. Despite difficulties, people in Long Dinh try to follow the craft because _____.

- A.they can have jobs in the rainy months
 - B.they can go to Korea, Japan and America
 - C.they can make the techniques of weaving different
 - D.they can earn more money than growing rice
4. In order to meet market demands, artisans in Long Dinh .
- A.produce new products from rare material
 - B.hire thousands of local labourers
 - C.try to produce various types of products
 - D.stop producing the traditional sedge mats
5. We can infer from the passage that _____.
- A.the new technique makes labourers work in the dry season
 - B.Long Dinh mat production is only well-known in foreign markets
 - C.the craft contributes much to the village economy
 - D.most of the households in Long Dinh village live on weaving mats

VII.Read the passage, and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

Bau Truc pottery items are made from clay from the Quao River mixed with sand. Clay is collected from the river only once a year, each lasting for half a month. Clay is taken more or less depending on the ability of each person. In the clay collecting season, local people try to take as much clay as they can to store, for use in the entire year.

Currently, people in Bau Truc pottery village still make pottery items in the traditional way. They do not use the wheel but the craftsmen have to turn around the products. The potters shape their products by skillful hands and feet around a pole-round pillar, rather than on the wheel. From this step, silky clay block initially gradually forms a smooth rounded hollow blocks, then the formation of flower vases, or water pots.

Bau Truc's craftsmen use wet cloths to make the product surface smooth. These items are decorated with seashells, snails or hand-made paintings featuring the daily life of Bau Truc's people.

- | | T | F |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1.Clay can be collected from the Quao River all year round. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2.Bau Truc pottery is famous because people only use fine clay to make their products. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3.People still make the pottery in the traditional way. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4.Craftsmen shape the pottery items only with their hands and feet. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5.The pots nowadays are shaped on the potter's wheel. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6.Craftsmen use simple ways to make the product surface smooth. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7.The craftsmen's skills can make the blocks of clay become lively and useful. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8.The designs of Bau Truc pottery reflect the life of local people. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

VIII.Read the passage, and do the tasks that follow.

Bat Trang Pottery Village

Bat Trang, a traditional porcelain and pottery village with history of seven centuries, is an interesting attraction in Ha Noi that tourists should not ignore.

Located in an area **rich** in clay, the village has advantage of ingredients to create fine ceramics. Moreover, lying beside the Red River, between Thang Long and Pho Hien, two ancient trade centers in the north of Viet Nam during the 15th-17thcenturies. Bat Trang's ceramics were favourite products not only in the **domestic**market, but also foreign ones thanks to Japanese, Chinese and Western trading boats that passed by.

In the 18th and 19th centuries, due to **restricting** foreign trade policy of Trinh, Nguyen dynasties, it was difficult for pottery products in Viet Nam to be exported to foreign countries, and some famous pottery-making villages like Bat Trang, or Chu Dau (Hai Duong province) went through a hard time. Since 1986, thanks to economic reforms and development, more attention has been paid to the village and the world gets a chance to know more about Vietnamese porcelain through many high quality exported Bat Trang's ceramic products.

Bat Trang ceramics are produced for daily household use (bowl, cups, plates, pots, bottles...), worshipping, or decoration purposes. Nowadays, the pottery artists bring into ceramics many **innovations** in production techniques, and creativity in products' features, so many new products have been made, and even daily household items may have the beauty like decoration ones.

Visiting Bat Trang, tourists can visit Bat Trang Porcelain and Pottery Market where they can directly make pottery products by themselves. Many youngsters and foreign tourists are interested in this pottery-making experience, and spend a whole day in the market making a souvenir for their families or friends.

Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
_____	1. rich (adj)	A. of or inside a particular country
_____	2. domestic	B. limiting a certain activity
_____	3. restricting	C. new ideas or methods
_____	(adj)	D. containing a lot of something
_____	4. innovations	
	(n)	

Task 2: Read the passage again, and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

- | | | T | F |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Bat Trang pottery has been developed since the 7 th century. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 2. Bat Trang's pottery products were exported to foreign markets during the 18 th and 19 th centuries. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 3. Its location beside the Red River has provided an enormous source of fine clay as ingredient for pottery making. | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. Many Japanese, Chinese and Western trading boats came to Pho Hien during the 15 th and 17 th centuries. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 5. Artisans in Bat Trang village have always kept the traditions without any changes. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 6. Bat Trang Village has been the only centre of pottery in the north of Viet Nam for centuries. | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7. Political policies have had influence on development of pottery and the ceramic crafts. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 8. Tourists may have experience of making pottery pieces by themselves. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | |

IX. Write an email to your pen friend about a trip to craft villages around Hoi An, using the words or phrases below to make complete sentences. Add more words, if necessary.

Dear David,

1. You/ start/ trip/ taking/ short walk down/ harbor/ Hoi An/ where/ you/ board/ wooden boat.

2. First/ you/ get/ pottery Thanh Ha village/ where/ local people/ continue/ make/ craft pots/ hand.

3. Then/ you/ continue/ visit/ carpentry village/ Kim Bong/ which/ have/ huge influence/ architecture/ Hoi An.

4. The traditional carpentry/ keep/ alive/ and/ still used/ restoring/ old buildings/ Hoi An.

5. Your trip/ finish/ boat trip/ back/ ancient town/ Hoi An.

Look forward to seeing you soon!

Best wishes

X. Write an email to your pen friend about Du Du sculpture village, using the words or phrases below to make complete sentences. Add more words, if necessary.

Dear Ann,

46. Du Du craft village/ traditional sculpture village/ various kinds/ products.

47. When/ you/ arrive/ Du Du village/ you/ have/ a chance/ study full processes/ statue making/ raw material/ a finished product.

48. Thanks/ skillful hands/ products/ become/ lively/ artistic.
49. Statues/ made/ Du Du workers/ look/ real humans/ from/ a glint/ smile.
50. Many artisans/ village/ make/ a lot/ wooden statues/ the Hue Citadel.

Look forward to seeing you soon!

Best wishes

TEST 3 UNIT 1

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. a. <u>pot</u> tery | b. <u>pro</u> duct | c. <u>wo</u> rks <u>h</u> op | d. <u>co</u> nical |
| 2. a. <u>sur</u> face | b. <u>lay</u> er | c. <u>fr</u> ame | d. <u>birth</u> place |
| 3. a. <u>weath</u> er | b. <u>thr</u> ead | c. <u>togeth</u> er | d. <u>rat</u> her |
| 4. a. <u>h</u> istorical | b. <u>sys</u> tem | c. <u>land</u> scape | d. <u>busi</u> ness |
| 5. a. <u>car</u> ved | b. <u>impr</u> essed | c. <u>embroider</u> ed | d. <u>weav</u> ed |

II. Choose the word that has the main stress placed differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. craftsman | b. attraction | c. museum | d. department |
| 2. a. embroider | b. lantern | c. impress | d. desire |
| 3. a. workshop | b. remind | c. outskirts | d. village |
| 4. a. competition | b. generation | c. conical | d. authenticity |
| 5. a. family | b. typical | c. grandparents | d. embroider |

III. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

- The museum has a superb collection of ancient _____ from Nubia.
a. artefacts b. leather c. presence d. beads
- Our aim is to make the performing arts, museums and our _____ accessible to all.
a. love b. patriotism c. heritage d. status
- I have ten pictures and eight pieces _____ sculpture on exhibition.
a. of b. on c. in d. for
- David Ferris's father was a bank manager living _____ the outskirts of the Lancastrian town of Preston.
a. of b. on c. in d. at
- All people should join hand in protecting the environment _____ we can gain better health.
a. in order that b. when c. because d. even though
- _____ we were waiting, a woman with a phone on her hand asked us what we were doing.
a. That b. In order that c. While d. Although
- The bus _____ up passengers outside the airport.
a. hits b. sends c. lays d. picks
- After visiting Van Phuc village, they came _____ to their hotel for lunch.
a. at b. up c. down d. back
- A: I'll pick you up at eight o'clock on my way to the airport.
B: _____
a. For pleasure b. Great. I'll see you then.
c. I have a phone. d. Would be.
- A: Would you like to join us on the trip to La Khe Silk Village?
B: _____
a. Sounds great. b. For now.
c. Better things happened. d. I don't think so.

IV. Match the word with its definition.

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 1. artisan | a. a product that is made by hand rather than by using a machine |
| 2. workshop | b. the process of encouraging members of a group to work well together by having |

them take part in activities and games

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 3. authenticity | c. a person who does skilled work, making things with their hands |
| 4. handicraft | d. a long, thin strand of cotton, nylon, or other fibers used in sewing or weaving |
| 5. team-building | e. the place where something first started to exist |
| 6. birthplace | f. a room or building where things are made using tools or machines |
| 7. thread | g. a work of art that is a solid figure or object made by carving or shaping wood, stone, clay, metal, etc. |
| 8. sculpture | h. the quality of being real or true |

V. Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

carved	cast	knitted	embroidered
produced	mould	woven	ironed

1. She _____ her uniform every chance, keeping it crisp and fresh.
2. These baskets are _____ from strips of willow.
3. I've _____ a sweater for John, and now I'm making one for me.
4. The dragon pattern was sometimes _____ on the cloth.
5. The statue was _____ out of a single piece of stone.
6. This video shows how to _____ a cup from clay.
7. Dong Son drums were _____ in bronze and designed with traditional patterns.
8. Every year, a lot of products are _____ from the workshop of Phong's family.

VI. Fill in the blank with an appropriate preposition or adverb to form a phrasal verb.

1. They got _____ bus and walked to the craft village.
2. The museum has been temporarily closed _____ for reconstruction.
3. Bat Trang Ceramic Village is facing up _____ the lack of artisans.
4. He asked her to go on a vacation with his family but she turned him _____.
5. Tourists coming _____ Western countries find conical hats interesting.
6. She is used to dealing _____ all kinds of people in her job.
7. He got _____ to find himself alone in the house.
8. Tomorrow's match has been called _____ because of the icy weather.
9. I'm looking _____ to the reunion with my family in Vietnam.
10. These traditional stories have been passed _____ from parent to child over many generations.

VII. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word in capital.

1. Local people can earn their livings by providing tourists with necessary services. (LIVE)
→ Local people _____
2. That man has a friendly relationship with the owner of Los Angeles County Museum of Art. (GETS)
→ That man _____
3. Pictures of the suspect were published in all daily papers. (BROUGHT)
→ Pictures _____
4. There is no oil and gas left on Earth. (RUN)
→ The Earth has _____
5. The council had to cancel the football match because of the storm. (CALL)
→ The council _____
6. She was reading a magazine as she waited in the doctor's office. (LOOKING)
→ She _____
7. I will return to Hoi An to have another week of adventure this summer. (COME)
→ I _____
8. After leaving college, he started his own business with a bank loan. (SET)
→ After _____
9. She promised to meet me at the cinema this evening, but she didn't arrive. (TURN)

→

10. Nicholas began his trip to the remote farmhouse in Connecticut yesterday. (SET)

→ Nicholas

VIII. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. You can't really have seen a UFO! You _____ (imagine) things!
2. Linda was busy when we _____ (go) to see her yesterday. She _____ (study) for an exam.
3. The festival is held by the Hanoi City Department of Tourism _____ (preserve) and develop traditional trade villages in Hanoi.
4. The owner of Hakata Traditional Craft and Design Museum _____ (close) it down because of dropping profit.
5. Conical hat making _____ (be) a traditional craft for hundreds of years.
6. The building _____ (complete) at the end of last month.
7. Individuals should be responsible for _____ (revive) local culture.
8. _____ (you/ ever/ be) to Bat Trang Ceramic Village?

IX. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. The price of clay, supplies and equipment is a small percentage of the total cost to _____ pottery. (product)
2. He started the youth group to keep local _____ off the streets. (young)
3. Poem conical hats are believed to come from Tay Ho Village in Hue, which was famous for _____ hat makers. (skill)
4. Today, _____ Hang Trong paintings are found only in museums or fine art galleries. (authenticity)
5. Craft village tourism has also proved an _____, receiving great attention from visitors, especially foreign tourists. (attract)
6. Mass _____ started in 1989 when the first 340 Windsurf guests arrived. (tour)
7. The tribe is concerned with the _____ of its culture and traditions. (preserve)
8. The second collection was more decorative, inspired by _____ and pattern. (embroider)
9. Vietnamese people have a strong desire to maintain a distinct _____ identity. (culture)
10. I'd like to thank everyone for helping to make this day _____ for us. (memory)

X. Read the text then answer the questions.

HANOI, A CAPITAL OF TRADITIONAL CRAFTS

Hanoi has long been home to hundreds of craft villages. Over the years, many of the crafts have developed, while some have disappeared altogether.

The heart and soul of Hanoi's vibrant old crafts are its craftsmen and women. One such couple are Nguyen Van Hoa and his wife Dang Huong Lan of Ba Dinh District's Hang Than Street. They are among the few artisans still making elaborate cardboard masks in order to preserve the traditional culture.

Although the work itself requires many steps, the materials required are simple: newspapers, glue, paint and paintbrushes. The first step entails tearing the newspapers to pieces and then using glue to combine them into a mold. The masks are painted one color at a time and then laid out to dry. Cardboard mask making is therefore dependent on dry weather and the couple can only make about 2,000 masks per festival. These are priced from VND25,000 to VND35,000 a piece, bringing in VND50-60 million - a sum is not commensurate with the efforts that go into making these elaborate crafts.

Making swans out of cotton is also a traditional craft. Only artisan Vu Thi Thanh Tam of 79 Hang Luoc Street in the capital makes these swans. The swan frames are made of notebook paper and are stuffed with cotton, then a skillful artisan puts each layer of cotton on the swan frames and uses rice water to smooth them. The swan neck is made of steel wire and is covered by cotton. The finished product is placed in a rattan basket with cotton around and glass-beads and silk flowers are added for color.

The continuity of traditional crafts adds to the capital's attractiveness in the eyes of citizens and international visitors.

1. Who plays role as the heart and soul of Hanoi's crafts?

2. Which traditional craft do Mr. Hoa and his wife preserve?

3. How many materials are there to make that craft? What are they?

4. Which kind of weather does the craft making process depend on?

5. What are the swan frames made of?

6. What does the artisan use to smooth the frames?

7. What is added to color the finished product?

XI. Fill in the gap with one word from the box.

artisans	skillful	handicraft	completely
long-standing	souvenirs	where	set

I've just been back from my vacation in Hanoi, Vietnam. In this trip, I had a chance to visit some (1) _____ villages that produce the finest craft works exported over the world.

The very first place I (2) _____ foot on was Van Phuc silk village, the cradle of best silk in Vietnam once. I totally fall in love with many colourful clothes, hats, bags, tie... made of authentic silk. Then, I moved on to Bat Trang ceramic village, the most famous and (3) _____ pottery village in Vietnam with a nearly 1,000 years old historic development. Here, I visited a small family factory to see how the (4) _____ form, paint and glaze with unique products and have a chance to practice my talent with wet clay and a mould. Afternoon, I continued to visit Dong Ho folk painting village, (5) _____ the traditional woodblock paintings are preserved. I was completely impressed by the folk paintings made by the local (6) _____ artisans with natural materials and colors. Each painting is (7) _____ handmade on paper of the Dzo tree and is coloured with other natural materials and its glittery surface is finished with oyster shell dust.

I took home a lot of handmade (8) _____ which were later given to my family and friends.

XII. Read the text and decide whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F).

Symbolic Meaning of Matryoshka

Everyone knows that a Matryoshka is a nesting doll. It is a set of typically seven wooden dolls of decreasing sizes that all fit inside of each other, one by one. Each stacking doll splits in half at the midsection and opens to reveal another smaller doll nested within. Each Matryoshka is handmade, for this reason, it is unique: you cannot find two Matryoshka identical.

Matryoshka is made by different dolls. The biggest doll is called "mother", the smallest one is called seed. Originally, the biggest doll represents a strong female matriarch who is the main symbol of the Russian family. In itself, the doll fits inside little dolls which represent daughters and sons. For this reason, Matryoshka represents fertility and motherhood.

The Matryoshka is also the symbol of Russia: the big doll represents Russia mother, and in itself she hosts children, women, men, but also feelings like pain, happiness, joy. It is a mother who can host all these things. Matryoshka can represent also our life: we are like a big doll with other dolls inside which represent our stories, relationships, experiences. We are one person with different experiences. The seed represents our soul which is innocent and it is the real essence of ourselves.

1. Russian doll matryoshka is composed of dolls of different sizes fitting into each other.
2. It is true that you can find two Matryoshka identical.
3. Matryoshka is a symbol of motherhood and fertility of nature.
4. The biggest doll represents a powerful woman in a family.

5. Matryoshka shows the role of members in a family.
6. Dolls inside the Matryoshka depict different aspects of human life, such as our stories, relationships and experience.
7. The seed, the smallest doll, represents the purity of childhood and our nature.

XIII. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.

1. I'm really excited about the upcoming pottery workshop.
→ I'm looking _____
2. We invited a pop star to the chat show, but he didn't arrive.
→ The pop star _____
3. He misbehaved in the class so the teacher asked him to go out.
→ The teacher asked _____
4. The artisans carved figures of lions and unicorns on the top of the box.
→ Figures _____
5. Don't leave the computer on when you leave.
→ Turn _____
6. They wanted to apologize for their behavior: that's why they paid for dinner.
→ They paid for dinner in order _____
7. When I was a child, I usually went to the local park every Saturday afternoon.
→ When I was a child, I used _____
8. Their teacher is making them study hard.
→ They _____

XIV. Join each pair of sentences, using the word or phrase in brackets.

1. Hoa was born in Doc So craft village. She knows the process of making pottery. (BECAUSE)

2. The library was bombed. Many important historical documents were destroyed. (WHEN)

3. She entered the room. She knew there was something wrong. (AS SOON AS)

4. We decided to take rooms in Longwood House. We knew we could not afford the rent. (EVEN THOUGH)

5. My mom instructed me through 15 stages of making a conical hat. I could make one for me. (SO THAT)

6. You want to knit a hat for your friend. You should watch tutorials on YouTube. (BEFORE)

7. I was not enjoying the party. I wanted to leave early. (AS)

8. I was cleaning out my cupboards. I found these photos. (WHILE)

9. I went to Malaysia last year. I wanted to experience a whole new world. (IN ORDER TO)

10. I attended a knitting workshop last Sunday. I don't know how to knit a scarf. (ALTHOUGH)

XV. Mark the letter a, b, c or d to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences.

1. Elizabeth was writing a note to her friend. The train arrived.
 - a. Elizabeth was writing a note to her friend as soon as the train arrived.
 - b. After the train arrived, Elizabeth was writing a note to her friend.
 - c. The train arrived while Elizabeth was writing a note to her friend.
 - d. Elizabeth was writing a note to her friend whenever the train arrived.
2. The water is very cold in January. We go swimming anyway.
 - a. When the water is very cold in January, we go swimming anyway.

- b. As the water is very cold in January, we go swimming anyway.
 - c. The water is very cold in January if we go swimming anyway.
 - d. Although the water is very cold in January, we go swimming anyway.
3. The water was very rough. The lifeguards made all of the swimmers leave the water.
 - a. Since the water was very rough, the lifeguards made all of the swimmers leave the water.
 - b. The water was very rough so that the lifeguards made all of the swimmers leave the water.
 - c. The water was very rough because the lifeguards made all of the swimmers leave
 - d. The lifeguards made all of the swimmers leave the water though the water was very rough.
 4. Mike goes jogging two miles every morning. Then he gets ready for work.
 - a. Mike goes jogging two miles every morning after he gets ready for work.
 - b. Mike goes jogging two miles every morning before he gets ready for work.
 - c. Mike goes jogging two miles every morning as soon as he gets ready for work.
 - d. Mike goes jogging two miles every morning when he gets ready for work.
 5. Ticket prices might be more expensive. Going to the movies is still much cheaper than going to a concert.
 - a. Ticket prices might be more expensive then going to the movies is still much cheaper than going to a concert.
 - b. Ticket prices might be more expensive that going to the movies is still much cheaper than going to a concert.
 - c. Going to the movies is still much cheaper than going to a concert since ticket prices might be more expensive.
 - d. Going to the movies is still much cheaper than going to a concert although ticket prices might be more expensive.
 6. We went to Dong Xuan Market. We flew back to Ho Chi Minh City at 7pm.
 - a. We went to Dong Xuan Market while we flew back to Ho Chi Minh City at 7pm.
 - b. Before we flew back to Ho Chi Minh City at 7pm, we went to Dong Xuan Market.
 - c. We went to Dong Xuan Market in order that we flew back to Ho Chi Minh City at 7pm.
 - d. As we went to Dong Xuan Market, we flew back to Ho Chi Minh City at 7pm.
 7. You need to plan your trip to South America carefully. You don't spend all your money too quickly.
 - a. You need to plan your trip to America carefully so that you don't spend all your money too quickly.
 - b. You need to plan your trip to America carefully although you don't spend all your money too quickly.
 - c. You need to plan your trip to America carefully as you don't spend all your money too quickly.
 - d. Even though you need to plan your trip to America carefully, you don't spend all your money too quickly.
 8. Richard is very wealthy. He can afford to buy almost anything he wants.
 - a. Although Richard is very wealthy, he can afford to buy almost anything he wants.
 - b. Richard is so wealthy that he can afford to buy almost anything he wants.
 - c. Richard is very wealthy so that he can afford to buy almost anything he wants.
 - d. Richard can afford to buy almost anything he wants, but he is very wealthy.

UNIT 2: CITY LIFE

A. VOCABULARY

1. fabulous (adj)	/ˈfæbjələs/:	tuyệt vời, tuyệt diệu
2. reliable (adj)	/rɪˈlaɪəbl/:	đáng tin cậy
3. metropolitan (adj)	/ˌmetrəˈpɒlɪtən/:	(thuộc về) đô thị, thu phụ
4. multicultural (adj)	/ˌmʌltiˈkʌltʃərəl/:	đa văn hóa
5. variety (n)	/vəˈraɪəti/:	sự phong phú, đa dạng
6. grow up (ph.v)	/grəʊ ʌp/:	lớn lên, trưởng thành
7. packed (adj)	/pækt/:	chật ních người

8. urban (adj)	/ˈɜːbən/ (thuộc)	đô thị, thành thị
9. Oceania (n)	/ˌəʊsiˈɑːniə/	châu Đại Dương
10. medium-sized (adj)	/ˈmiːdiəm-saɪzd/	cỡ vừa, cỡ trung
11. forbidden (adj)	/fəˈbɪdn/	bị cấm
12. easy-going (adj)	/ˈiːzi-ˈɡəʊɪŋ/	thoải mái, dễ tính
13. downtown (adj)	/ˌdaʊnˈtaʊn/	(thuộc) trung tâm thành phố, khu thương mại
14. skyscraper (n)	/ˈskaɪskreɪpə/	nhà cao chọc trời
15. stuck (adj)	/stʌk/	mắc kẹt, không di chuyển được
16. wander (v)	/ˈwɒndə/	đi lang thang
17. affordable (adj)	/əˈfɔːdəbl/	(giá cả) phải chăng
18. conduct (v)	/kənˈdʌkt/	thực hiện
19. determine (v)	/dɪˈtɜːmɪn/	xác định
20. factor (n)	/ˈfæktə/	yếu tố
21. conflict (n)	/ˈkɒnfl ɪkt/	xung đột
22. indicator (n)	/ˈɪndɪkeɪtə/	chỉ số
23. asset (n)	/ˈæset/	tài sản
24. urban sprawl	/ˈɜːbən sprɔːl/	sự đô thị hóa
25. index (n)	/ˈɪndeks/	chỉ số
26. metro (n)	/ˈmetrəʊ/	tàu điện ngầm
27. dweller (n)	/ˈdwelə/	cư dân
28. negative (adj)	/ˈnegətɪv/	tiêu cực

29. for the time being /fə(r) ðə taɪm ˈbiːɪŋ/ hiện thời **B- GRAMMAR:**

ÔN TẬP SO SÁNH VỚI TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ (COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES)

1. So sánh hơn với tính từ (comparative form of adjectives)

Comparison of adjectives and adverbs: Review (Sự so sánh của những tính từ và trạng từ: Ôn tập)

- Bạn có thể sử dụng much, a lot, a bit và a little

* Tính từ ngắn là những tính từ có 1 âm tiết. Ví dụ: tall, high, big

* Tính từ dài là những tính từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên. Ví dụ: expensive, intelligent

Cấu trúc câu so sánh hơn với tính từ.

Đối với tính từ ngắn	Đối với tính từ dài
<i>S1 + to be + adj + er + than + S2</i>	<i>S1 + to be + more + adj + than + S2</i>
<i>Với tính từ ngắn, thêm đuôi “er” vào sau tính từ</i>	<i>Với tính từ dài, thêm đuôi “more” vào trước tính từ</i>
<i>Ví dụ:</i> <i>China is <u>bigger than</u> India.</i> <i>(Trung Quốc lớn hơn Ấn Độ)</i> <i>Lan is <u>shorter than</u> Nam.</i> <i>(Lan thì thấp hơn Nam)</i> <i>My house is <u>bigger than</u> your house.</i> <i>(Nhà của tôi to hơn nhà của bạn)</i> <i>His pen is <u>newer than</u> my pen.</i> <i>(Bút của anh ấy mới hơn bút của tôi)</i>	<i>Ví dụ:</i> <i>Gold is <u>more valuable than</u> silver.</i> <i>(Vàng có giá trị hơn bạc)</i> <i>Hanh is <u>more beautiful than</u> Hoa.</i> <i>(Hạnh thì xinh hơn Hoa)</i> <i>Your book is <u>more expensive than</u> his book.</i> <i>(Quyển sách của bạn đắt hơn quyển sách của anh ấy)</i> <i>Exercise 1 is <u>more difficult than</u> exercise 2.</i> <i>(Bài tập số 1 khó hơn bài tập số 2)</i>
<i>Để nhấn mạnh ý trong câu so sánh hơn, ta thêm much, a lot, a bit, a little và far vào sau hình thức so sánh của tính từ để diễn tả sự khác nhau lớn thế nào.</i> <i>A DVD is much better than a video for watching film. (Xem phim bằng đĩa DVD thì tốt hơn nhiều so với bằng video).</i> <i>Ex: His boyfriend is much/far older than</i>	

<p>her. Bạn trai của cậu ấy lớn tuổi hơn cô ấy nhiều. <i>I got up a little later than usual.</i> Tôi thức dậy trễ hơn thường ngày một chút. <i>I'm feeling a lot better today.</i> Hôm nay tôi thấy khỏe hơn nhiều. - Với hình thái so sánh nhất của tính từ bạn có thể sử dụng <i>second, third...</i> <i>Ex: Karachi in Pakistan is the second largest city in the world in population.</i> <i>Karachi Ở Pakistan là một thành phố lớn thứ 2 trên thế giới về mật độ dân số.</i> - Bạn có thể sử dụng <i>by far</i> để nhấn mạnh sự so sánh tuyệt đối. <i>Ex: China is by far to emphasise superlatives.</i> <i>Trung Quốc là quốc gia đông dân nhất thế giới.</i></p>	
---	--

2. So sánh hơn với trạng từ (Comparative forms of adverbs)

Tương tự như tính từ, trạng từ cũng được chia làm 2 loại:

* trạng từ ngắn là những từ có 1 âm tiết. Ví dụ: fast, near, far, right, wrong.

* Trạng từ dài là những từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên. Ví dụ: slowly, responsibly, quickly, interestingly, tiredly...

Cấu trúc câu so sánh hơn với trạng từ

Đối với trạng từ ngắn	Đối với trạng từ dài
<i>S1 + V + adv +er + than + S2</i>	<i>S1 + V + more/less + adv +er + than + S2</i>
Với trạng từ ngắn, thường là trạng từ chỉ cách thức có hình thức giống tính từ, ta thêm đuôi "er" vào sau trạng từ.	Với trạng từ dài, hầu hết là trạng từ chỉ cách thức có đuôi "ly", ta thêm đuôi "more" (nhiều hơn) hoặc "less" (ít hơn) vào trước trạng từ. - "less" là từ phản nghĩa của "more" được dùng để diễn đạt sự không bằng nhau ở mức độ ít hơn.
<p>Ví dụ: <i>They work harder than I do.</i> (Họ làm việc chăm chỉ hơn tôi) <i>He runs faster than she does.</i> (Anh ấy chạy nhanh hơn cô ấy) <i>My mother gets up earlier than me.</i> (Mẹ tôi thức dậy sớm hơn tôi) <i>I go to school later than my friends do.</i> (Tôi đi học muộn hơn các bạn)</p>	<p>Ví dụ: <i>My friend did the test more carefully than I did.</i> (Bạn tôi làm bài kiểm tra cẩn thận hơn tôi) <i>My father talks more slowly than my mother does.</i> (Bố tôi nói chậm hơn mẹ tôi) <i>Hanh acts less responsibly than anyone here.</i> (Hạnh hành động thiếu trách nhiệm hơn bất cứ ai ở đây)</p>

3. So sánh nhất với tính từ (Superlative of adjectives)

Ta sử dụng so sánh nhất để so sánh người (hoặc vật) với tất cả người (hoặc vật) trong nhóm.

Đối với tính từ ngắn	Đối với tính từ dài
<i>S + to be + the + adj + - est + (danh từ)</i>	<i>S + to be + the most+ adj + (danh từ)</i>
<p>Ví dụ: <i>Russia is the biggest country in the world</i> (Nga là đất nước lớn nhất thế giới) <i>My school is the biggest in the city</i></p>	<p>Ví dụ: <i>This exercise is the most difficult.</i> (Bài tập này là khó nhất) <i>This is the most interesting film I've ever</i></p>

<p>(<i>Trường của tôi lớn nhất trong thành phố</i>) <i>My father is the oldest person in my family.</i> (<i>Bố tôi là người lớn tuổi nhất trong nhà</i>) <i>Quang is the tallest in his class.</i> (<i>Quang là người cao nhất trong lớp của anh ấy</i>)</p>	<p><i>seen.</i> (<i>Đây là bộ phim hay nhất tôi từng xem</i>) <i>Ngoc is the most intelligent student.</i> (<i>Ngọc là học sinh thông minh nhất</i>)</p>
<p>Để nhấn mạnh ý trong câu so sánh nhất, ta thêm “by far” vào sau hình thức so sánh hoặc có thể dùng <i>second, third...</i> Ví dụ: <i>He is the smallest <u>by far</u>.</i> (<i>Anh ấy thông minh nhất, hơn mọi người nhiều</i>) <i>Huong is the second tallest person in my class.</i> (<i>Hương là người cao thứ 2 trong lớp tôi</i>)</p>	

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Cho dạng so sánh hơn của các tính từ hoặc trạng từ trong ngoặc để hoàn thành các câu sau:

- Urban sprawl has happened (fast) _____ than ever before.
- Ha Noi is much (populous) _____ than my hometown.
- The city center is (densely) _____ populated than the suburbs.
- You can count on Peter. He is (reliable) _____ than he appears to be.
- This singer performs (well) _____ than she used to be three years ago.
- This year we travel (far) _____ than we did last year.
- I notice that today my daughter looked (happy) _____ than usual.
- As people gets old, they try to maintain a (healthy) _____ lifestyle than when they are young.
- Travelling by bus is much (slow) _____ than travelling by bullet train.
- Jim didn't feel well today, so he performed (badly) _____ than usual.
- You are (good) _____ than me when it comes to public speaking.
- He seem to be (familiar) _____ with his neighborhood than any one else here.
- Listen! Today Jim sings (beautifully) _____ than any other day.
- The air in the city is (polluted) _____ than that in the countryside.
- I think computer will be (helpful) _____ for you than a smartphone.

Bài 2: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

- Jim boasted that he could run (faster/fastlier) than anyone else in his class.
- her presentation is (poorer/ more poorly) prepared than I expected.
- Jim seems to care (littler/less) about his health than he could.
- If you had tried (harder/more hardly), you would have passed the test.
- Today the sun shines (brighter/ more brightly) than yesterday.
- Snow storm in my hometown is (more severe/ more severely) than anywhere elae in the country.
- I think you could reach a (higher/ more highly) position in the company if you tried.
- If you behaved (cleverer/ more cleverly), they would look up to you.
- Although my computer is old-fashioned, it runs (smoother/ more smoothly) than many of the modern ones.
- Thanks to immense practice, Jim can speak English much (more fluent/more fluently) than he used to.

Bài 3: Cho dạng so sánh hoặc so sánh nhất của các tính từ trong ngoặc để hoàn thành các câu sau.

- John is the second (intelligent) _____ student in his class.

2. If only the traffic in my hometown was (convenient) _____ than it is now.
3. Ha Noi is amongst (polluted) _____ city in the world.
4. I wish that my house was (spacious) _____.

Bài 4: Viết lại câu sau sao cho nghĩa không thay đổi, sử dụng dạng so sánh hơn của trạng từ hoặc tính từ.

0. Living in the city is much more expensive than living in the countryside.

=> Living in the countryside is much cheaper than living in the city.

1. My current house is more spacious than the old one.

=> My old house _____.

2. He performed better than he was expected.

=> He was expected _____.

3. This time Mike run faster than his brother.

=> This time Mike's brother _____.

4. I think you will have a higher position in our company than Jim.

=> I think Jim will _____.

5. Jane decorated her cake more beautifully than I did.

=> I _____.

6. This year Peter invested a larger amount of money on his business than last year.

=> Last year _____.

7. My computer is costlier than Jim's.

=> Jim's computer _____.

8. Playing sports is more time-saving than playing computer games.

=> Playing computer games _____.

Bài 5: Dựa vào những thông tin cho trong bảng dưới đây, hãy viết các câu so sánh với những tính từ thích hợp.

	Ha Noi City	Ho Chi Minh City
Population	7,588 million (2005)	8,426 million
Area	3,329 km ²	2,096 km ²
Pollution Density	2,171 per square kilometre	3,888 per square kilometre
Resident	More traditional	More dynamic
Weather (Winter)	Cold	Warm

1. Residents of Ha Noi City are more traditional than residents of Ho Chi Minh City.

2. Residents of Ho Chi Minh City are _____.

3. _____.

4. _____.

5. _____.

6. _____.

7. _____.

8. _____.

9. _____.

II. Cụm động từ (Phrasal Verbs) (tiếp)

Bên cạnh ý nghĩa, vị trí của động từ và tiểu từ trong cụm động từ cũng là phần kiến thức quan trọng các em cần chú ý tới.

1. Động từ chính và tiểu từ luôn đứng cạnh nhau

Dưới đây là những trường hợp động từ chính và tiểu từ luôn đi sát nhau, không bao giờ tách rời.

Trường hợp	Ví dụ
TH1: Với những cụm nội động từ (intransitive phrasal verb) không có tân ngữ phía sau.	<i>The magazine Time comes out once a week. (Báo Time được phát hành mỗi tuần một lần.)</i> <i>Our car broke down and had to be towed to a garage.</i>

	(Xe chúng tôi bị hư và phải kéo về chỗ sửa)
TH2: Với những cụm ngoại động từ được cấu tạo bởi động từ + giới từ (to, for, at,...), theo sau là tân ngữ.	<i>I ran into our old friend, Mary, the other day at the supermarket.</i> (Hôm đó, tôi gặp lại Mary, bạn cũ của tôi mình, ở siêu thị) <i>She was looking for the passport which she had lost.</i> (Chị ấy đang tìm kiếm cuốn hộ chiếu mà chị ấy đã mất)
TH3: Với những cụm từ được cấu tạo bởi động từ + trạng từ + giới từ (phrasal prepositional verbs), theo sau là tân ngữ.	<i>She was looking everywhere for the missing passport.</i> (KHÔNG DỪNG... looking for everywhere...) (Cô ta đang tìm khắp mọi nơi cho ra cuốn hộ chiếu đã mất) <i>I can't put up with this treatment any longer.</i> (KHÔNG DỪNG... put up this treatment/it with...) (KHÔNG DỪNG... put thí treatment/it up with.) (Tôi không thể nào chịu đựng nổi cách đối xử này nữa.)

Một vài cụm **phrasal verbs** có động từ và tiểu từ luôn đứng cạnh nhau:

Pass away (chết)	Wait for (đợi)	Use up (sử dụng hết, cạn kiệt)
belong to (thuộc về)	Take after (giống ai như đúc)	Stay up (đi ngủ muộn)
attend to (chú ý)	break up (chia tay, giải tán)	believe in (tin cần, tin có)
Save up (để dành)	Look after (chăm sóc)	Look for (trông đợi, tìm kiếm)
Shut up (ngậm miệng lại)	Clear up (dọn dẹp)	Set out/off (khởi hành, bắt đầu)
Show off (khoe khoang, khoe lác)	agree on sth (đồng ý với điều gì)	agree with (đồng ý với ai, hợp với, tốt cho)
Take over (giành quyền kiểm soát)	Run into (tình cờ gặp, đâm xô, lâm vào)	Watch out/ over (coi chừng, cẩn thận)

2. Động từ chính và tiểu từ có thể được ngăn cách bởi tân ngữ.

Cách dùng	Ví dụ
Hầu hết cụm ngoại động từ (transitive phrasal verb) thuộc loại này. Tân ngữ là một danh từ thì nó sẽ nằm ở giữa động từ và tiểu từ hoặc đi sau tiểu từ.	<i>I took my shoes off./ I took off my shoes.</i> (Tôi cởi giày ra.) <i>He admitted he'd made up the whole thing./He admitted he'd made the whole thing up.</i> (Anh ta thú nhận rằng đã bịa ra mọi chuyện.)
Khi tân ngữ là một đại từ như this, that, it, them, me, her & he'd thì đại từ này bắt buộc sẽ phải đứng ở giữa động từ và tiểu từ.	<i>I took them off. (KHÔNG DỪNG I took off them)</i> <i>He admitted he'd made it up. (KHÔNG DỪNG He admitted he'd made up it)</i>

Một vài cụm **phrasal verbs** có động từ và tiểu từ có thể đứng tách rời:

Pay sb back (trả nợ)	Take sth off (cởi cái gì đó)	Put sth on (mặc cái gì đó vào)
Tell sb off (la rầy ai đó)	Pick sb up (đón ai đó)	See sb off (tạm biệt)
Drop sb off (thả ai xuống xe)	Make sth up (bịa chuyện)	Keep sb together (gắn bó)
Pull sth out (lấy cái gì ra)	Put sth away (cất đi)	Put sth down (ghi chép lại)

ask sb in/out (cho ai vào/ra)	cut sth into (cắt vật gì thành)	Get sb down(làm ai thất vọng)
Turn sth/sb down (từ chối cái gì/ai đó)	Put something/ somebody out (đưa ai/cái gì ra ngoài)	Take sb/sth back to (đem trả lại)

- Sau mỗi cụm động từ thường có sb/sth, trong đó:sb viết tắt cho somebody (người nào đó), sth: viết tắt cho something (cái gì đó).

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 6: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng. (A,B,C)

1. Who does Jim take _____ ?

A. after	B. up	C. in
----------	-------	-------

2. I am waiting _____ the result of the test.

A. after	B. for	C. on
----------	--------	-------

3. They haven't agreed _____ what make of car they would buy.

A. on	B. in	C. with
-------	-------	---------

4. "Who did you run _____ yesterday?" "It was my old teacher."

A. on	B. out of	C. into
-------	-----------	---------

5. If we don't conserve the natural gas, it will soon be used _____ ?

A. up	B. off	C. to
-------	--------	-------

6. Are you still looking _____ a job or have you already got one?

A. after	B. up	C. for
----------	-------	--------

7. After years of being badly treated, James doesn't believe _____ the good things in life any more.

A. on	B. in	C. about
-------	-------	----------

8. Why did you stay _____ so late last night?

A. in	B. up	C. on
-------	-------	-------

9. When Mr. Brown went on a business trip, Mrs. Smith took _____ his work.

A. over	B. up	C. off
---------	-------	--------

10. Jim promised to pick me _____ from the airport.

A. over	B. up	C. on
---------	-------	-------

11. Peter took _____ his rain coat before he came in.

A. over	B. up	C. off
---------	-------	--------

12. You mustn't believe him. He made _____ the whole story which was completely wrong.

A. over	B. up	C. on
---------	-------	-------

13. Many of my friends came to the airport to see me _____ .

A. over	B. up	C. off
---------	-------	--------

14. The teacher told us to put _____ interesting details of the presentation.

A. up	B. down	C. away
-------	---------	---------

15. It is the shared mind that keeps us _____ .

A. up	B. together	C. with
-------	-------------	---------

Bài 7: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng:

- My mother told me to (put/get) on warm clothes before I went out.
- Jim really (got/put) me down when he forgot my birthday.
- My father never (tells/drops) me off but my mother is always shouting at me.
- I couldn't believe she (turned/got) down my invitation for the second time.
- My mother often lets me (look/take) after my younger brother.
- "Why did she (break/stay) up with you?" "She said I didn't care much about her".
- Please (drop/tell) me off in front of the theater.
- We've been (saving/looking) up to travel to New York this summer.
- Have you (take/put) out clean towels for the guests?
- (Take/Dress) off your rain coat before you come in.
- I remember (paying/looking) Jim back but he kept asking me for his money.

12. Jim's poor test results (got/looked) his parents down.
13. My grandmother (died/passed) away before I was born.
14. I have many tasks to (attend/look) to.
15. Who does this bag (belong/own) to?

Bài 8. Hoàn thành các câu dưới đây bằng cách điền tiểu từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống.

1. We will set _____ for Tokyo in the next few hours.
2. Everyone says that Jim takes _____ his father but I think he is more like his mother.
3. Who will take _____ your position when you are on parental leave?
4. There are four of us so Peter cuts the cake _____ four pieces.
5. I am going to buy a new bike, so I put my old one _____.
6. Remember to put the trash _____ before the garbage truck comes.
7. You must take _____ your hat before you come into a temple.
8. I hate the way my manager shuts me _____ when she disagrees with me.
9. What are you looking _____? My car keys.
10. Watch _____ for the dog. Everyone says that it is a fierce dog.

Bài 9. Đánh dấu[V] trước câu đúng, đánh dấu[X] trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng.

- _____ 1. Your son doesn't take you after at all.
- _____ 2. I think we will use the natural resources up in the near future.
- _____ 3. Jim agreed me with when I said he needed to improve his living condition.
- _____ 4. Mary and Peter broke them up after two months dating.
- _____ 5. I rarely put down what the teacher says but I can remember most of her words.
- _____ 6. The taxi driver dropped me off in front of the City Council building.
- _____ 7. You should clear your room up before mom comes back.
- _____ 8. I was happy that I run my old teacher into yesterday.
- _____ 9. Mary is always showing her jewelry off.
- _____ 10. Both of us agreed with Jane's opinion about our plan.

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 10: Dựa vào từ cho trước viết thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. Yesterday / the plane / lake / take / off / early / than / I expect.
.....
2. My / mother / look / after / us / carefully / than / my father.
.....
3. They / cut / the / big / cake / into / small / parts / than / I / think
.....
4. My / sister / even / tell / me / off / often / than / my / mother / do.
.....
5. Who / see / you / off / yesterday ?
.....

6.It / cold / today / so / I / put / on / warm / clothes / than / usual.

7.Yesterday/ my mother / pick / me /up / late / than / usual.

8.You / be / pretty / girl / I / ever / know.

9.Unless / you / listen / attentively / to / you / teacher, you / not / catch / up / with / your friends.

10.By far, “ The Little Prince” / be / my / favorite / book.

Bài 11: Hoàn thành các câu sau, sử dụng dạng so sánh của các trạng từ hoặc tính từ cho sẵn.

ancient	polluted	spacious	fast
populous	densely	tranquil	well

1.I prefer living in the countryside to living i big cities as the coutryside is _____
I really enjoy peaceful moment of like.

2.Although the cities are _____ than the countryside, there are more recreational
activated that I really enjoy in the cities.

3.I can't believe this vase is mre than 100 years old. It is much _____ than I thought.

4.The city is always _____ populated than the countryside .

5.My town is much _____ than it was ten years ago. I remember there used to be only
several houses in a large areas.

6.Houses in the rural area are _____ than those in the urban areas.

7.Young people often _____ adjust to changes than the old.

8.The number of skyscrapers in the city is growing _____ than ever before.

Bài 12: Hoàn thành những câu sau bằng cụm động từ thích hợp.

pay back	get down	believe in	watch out	tell off
pull out	see off	agree with	save up	make up

1. I have seen a lot of people brust into tears when they _____ their friends and family.

2.Do you _____ me that didn't try hard enough ?

3.Has your teacher ever _____ you _____ ? No, she hasn't. She is a nice teacher.

4.Last week I borrowed Tom &50 to buy a book but I _____ him yet.

5.My boyfriend walked towards me and then he _____ a small gift.

6.I never _____ in ghosts but my brother is always scared of them.

7. _____ ! There is a car coming.

8.I hate the way Peter tells lies and _____ stories to cheat people.

9.Have you _____ enough to buy a new car.

10.I promised my mother not to _____ her _____, so I tried my best to get high scores.

Bải 13: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng:

Many people who are close to their retirement want to move to the countryside to enjoy the rest of
their life. It is widely believed that life in the rural areas are (1) _____

Than that in the city. The countryside is _____ than the city and people's health will
improve. (3) _____, city folks have warned people about the potential risks of living

the rural areas. Life in the countryside may not be blissfully calm as expected, even tougher. For
example ,rural houses are (4) _____ and people living in it.(5) _____,people may also

(6) _____ up to the lack of health care service. The vulnerable old people can't be

(7) _____ treated in the countryside than in the city.For those who have spent most of their life
working and living in urban areas, they may not be able to (8) _____ the boredom and lack of
facility in the rural areas.

1.A.more peacful	B.more peacfully	C.more noisy	D.more noisily
2.A.less polluted	B.more polluted	C.less pollute	D.more pollute

3.A.However	B.But	C.Therefore	D.When
4.A.much weaker	B.more weaker	C.less weaker	D.more weakly
5.A.However	B.Besides	C.Whereas	D.Therefore
6.A.look	B.make	C.face	D.take
7.A.well	B.more better	C.best	D.better
8.A.come down with	B.put up with	C.work out	D.agree on

Bài 14: Đọc bài đọc sau đây. Điền T (true) trước câu có thông tin đúng với thông tin bài đọc. Điền F (false) trước câu có thông tin không đúng với nội dung bài đọc, điền NG (not given) trước câu có nội dung không có trong bài đọc.

Issues in big cities

These days, more and more people prefer urban life because of all the opportunities it brings about, namely job opportunity, recreational facilities, decent education and high standard of living. However, once they settle down in a city, they have to face up to more than one problem.

To begin with, the life in the urban city is also very stressful and busy. City dwellers often have a hectic pace of life, which means that they rarely have enough time for recreational activities. People have to work hard and compete fiercely to earn a decent living, which puts people under a lot of pressure. Moreover, working hard and extra working hours mean that urban residents have very short time for their family and friends. Many people have complained that parents in the cities do not pay much attention to their children and people tend to talk less to each other.

Furthermore, people have to put up with heavy pollution in the city. There are many kinds of pollution such as air, water, land, noise and even light pollution. This is understandable because there are numerous pollutants in the city. For example, exhaust fumes from vehicles or emissions from factories are the main causes of air pollution. Pollution is detrimental to human health. It can create some incurable diseases for people such as lung cancer when we inhale too much fume and dust.

Another serious problem is unemployment. While many people move to the city with hope of finding a job, their dreams turn sour due to the competitive job market. In the city the demand for the quality of workforce is getting higher and higher. Poorly-trained workers from rural areas may become jobless in the city.

In conclusion, should people want to move from the countryside to the urban areas, they have to consider all the advantages and disadvantages before making up their mind.

- _____ 1. There are more opportunities than problems for people living in the urban areas
- _____ 2. Although people in the city are busy, they can always have time for entertainment activities.
- _____ 3. People have to work hard and compete fiercely to make money.
- _____ 4. People don't have to tolerate heavy pollution in the city.
- _____ 5. Air pollution is the most serious issue in the city.
- _____ 6. The competitive job market in the city causes difficulties for workers with low quality to find a job.

C.EXERCISES

TEST 1 (UNIT 2)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1.A. conduct | B. difficult | C. stuck | D. fun |
| 2.A. metropolitan | B. polluted | C. forbidden | D. affordable |
| 3.A. feature | B. culture | C. tradition | D. statue |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 4.A. populous | B. determine | C. forbidden | D. delicious |
| 5.A. metropolitan | B. fascinatingly | C. multicultural | D. recreational |

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. It is considered that life in a city is wonderful and _____.

- A. funny B. boring C. enjoyable D. helpful
7. You'll have _____ opportunities to widen your global horizons while living in this cultural capital city.
A. unlimited B. comfortable C. cheerful D. populous
8. Dubai's Palm Islands in the blue ocean is the _____ of a good and sunny life.
A. indicator B. view C. signal D. sign
9. This place is so _____ with the non-stop flow of customers to come and enjoy *pho*.
A. delicious B. convenient C. popular D. exciting
10. Visitors can take a free boat from Manhattan to Staten Island for a great _____ of the Statue of Liberty and the Manhattan skyline.
A. view B. sight C. scene D. landscape
11. Ha Noi also offers a nightlife as exciting as _____ in Ho Chi Minh City.
A. it B. which C. what D. that
12. When you want to relax, you'll have one of the world's _____ cities at your feet, with more than 40% green space and open water to enjoy.
A. greener B. greenest C. mostly green D. green mostly
13. Let me know when you come to Ha Noi and I'll _____.
A. take you out B. bring you around C. cheer you up D. show you around
14. We expected her at nine but she finally _____ at eleven.
A. turned up B. turned out C. came over D. grew up
15. Ann is taking extra lessons to _____ what she missed while she was sick.
A. take back B. get on well with C. keep up with D. look forward to

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

<i>identify</i>	<i>ancient</i>	<i>chances</i>	<i>romantic</i>
<i>symbols</i>	<i>cosmopolitan</i>	<i>important</i>	<i>populous</i>

City icons play an important role in the efforts of cities to get remembered. The icons are that the city (1) _____ that appear on postcards sent to family and friends. By seeing one shot of the Golden Gate Bridge in a television series or movie, we know immediately it is San Francisco.

Good city icons carry a meaning. They tell a story about the associated city. For example, the Eiffel Tower is definitely the most (2) _____ symbol of Paris. It has a simple form but it symbolises what Paris is and wants to be: the world's most (3) _____ city. Love couples from all over the world go up to see the sunset over Paris.

Besides, Rome's Colosseum stands for the true (4) _____ of Rome: a(n) (5) _____ city that relies on its historical importance. The Colosseum as an icon show the current importance of historical values among Rome's inhabitants.

V. Complete each sentence with a phrasal verb from the box. Change the form of the verb if necessary.

<i>turn up</i>	<i>take off</i>	<i>set up</i>	<i>grow up</i>	<i>look forward to</i>
----------------	-----------------	---------------	----------------	------------------------

21. Please _____ your shoes when you come in the house.
22. I was born in Hai Duong, but I _____ in Ha Noi.
23. I'm really _____ my holiday to Nha Trang.
24. It is necessary for a foreign language centre to _____ an English club.
25. Tom is not very punctual. He usually _____ ten minutes after the lesson has started.

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

There are 21,900 households in an area of less than 100 hectares of the Old Quarter in Ha Noi. In many houses, an entire family may (1) _____ no more than a single room.

A house on Hang Ca Street, (2) _____ in the 1940s, originally belonged to one wealthy man and his wives, and now there are six households there with about 30 people. Many say the convenience of the Old Quarter (3) _____ compensates for the shortage of facilities. Tradition is also a(n) (4) _____ because

some residents have (5)_____ houses elsewhere but no one wants to sell the old houses or rooms (6)_____ these are the houses of the ancestors.

The authorities of Ha Noi have had a plan to (7)_____ 25,000 of the Old Quarter's 84,000 residents, beginning in 2009 when 1,900 households will go to a new development area, across the Red River.

However, people don't want to live in a high-rise block because they (8)_____ to it. Authorities will take (9)_____ to find out what people will need to (10)_____ them feel comfortable in their new neighbourhood.

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 26.A. fill | B. exist | C. control | D. occupy |
| 27.A. build | B. built | C. to be built | D. was built |
| 28.A. live | B. lives | C. living | D. liveliness |
| 29.A. factor | B. element | C. situation | D. occasion |
| 30.A. no | B. none | C. bigger | D. biggest |
| 31.A. but | B. because | C. so | D. although |
| 32.A. move | B. leave | C. change | D. bring |
| 33.A. didn't use | B. were not used | C. are used | D. are not used |
| 34.A. influence | B. effort | C. time | D. notice |
| 35.A. make | B. cause | C. let | D. allow |

VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Unlike life in the countryside which is often considered to be simple and traditional, life in the city is modern and complicated. People, from different regions, move to the cities in the hope of having a better life for them and their children. The inhabitants in city work as secretaries, businessmen, teachers, government workers, factory workers and even street vendors or construction workers.

The high cost of living requires city dwellers, especially someone with low income, to work harder or to take a part-time job. For many people, an ordinary day starts as usual by getting up in the early morning to do exercise in public parks, preparing for a full day of working and studying, then travelling along crowded boulevards or narrow streets filled with motor scooters and returning home after a busy day. They usually live in large houses, or high-rise apartment blocks or even in a small rental room equipped with modern facilities, like the Internet, telephone, television, and so on. Industrialization and modernization as well as global integration have big **impact** on lifestyle in the cities. The most noticeable impact is the Western style of clothes. The "ao dai" - Vietnamese traditional clothes big are no longer regularly worn in Vietnamese women's daily life. Instead, jeans, T-shirts and fashionable clothes are widely preferred.

- The most important reason why people move to the city is that _____.
A. to look for a complicated life B. to take part-time job
C. to have busy day D. to look for a better life
- According to the passage, the city life can offer city dwellers all of the following things EXCEPT _____.
A. the Internet B. friendly communication with neighbours
C. a variety of jobs in different fields D. modern facilities
- We can infer from the passage that _____.
A. there is a big gap between the rich and the poor in the city
B. people do morning exercise in public parks because they have much free time
C. people leave the countryside because life there is simple
D. most of the urban dwellers have low income
- Industrialization and modernization may lead to _____.
A. the fact that women no longer wear *ao dai*
B. the disappearance of Western-styled clothes
C. some changes in lifestyles
D. global integration
- The word "**impact**" in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to _____.
A. force B. action C. situation D. effect

VIII. Read the text, and identify whether the statements are true (T), false (F), or not given (NG).

City is often described as a large and a highly populated area. Therefore, city life is living in a large a large populated, technologically advanced area. According to World Health Organization, 54% of the world's population lived in urban areas by 2014. A city is technologically more advanced and complex than the countryside. Therefore, there are many advantages in living in a city. Technology makes our lives easy in a city. Cities have many facilities like high-quality hospitals, educational institutes, banks, shops and other business institutes. This makes our life easy as we can access the facilities provided these institutes and organizations without delay. Moreover, many employment opportunities are available in the city as many major business institutes, factories are located here. City life also gives us access to developed infrastructure facilities, like water, electricity, telecommunication and transportation facilities.

However, we can also notice a difference in the behavior of the people living in the city. City dwellers tend to be busier, ambitious and distant compared to the village folk.

	T	F
1. The majority of the world's population lived in urban areas in 2014.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. Modern facilities in the city make life easier	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. A city is culturally more advanced and complex than the countryside.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. Cities provide access to the modern facilities but they are often delayed.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. The environment is polluted with dirt, smoke, garbage, and carbon dioxide from factories.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. Infrastructure facilities include high-quality hospitals, educational institutes, banks, shops and other business institutes.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7. There is a variety of employment opportunities in a city.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8. People in the city and in the countryside have different attitudes toward life.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

III. Read the text, and identify whether the statements are true (T), false (F), or not given (NG).

The Statue of Jesus Christ in Vung Tau

The enormous 28-metre figure of Jesus gazing across the East Sea with outstretched arms is located at the southern end of Small Mountain. Built in 1971, this giant Jesus rests on a 10 metre-high platform. The interior of the statue is hollow and contains a spiral staircase of 129 steps, ascending from the foot of the statue to its neck. The two shoulders of the figure the balconies, each able to accommodate up to six people, which offer a splendid view of surrounding landscape. This is the largest sculpture in Southern Viet Nam. Recent construction of a pathway has made the 30-minute hike up the mountain more pleasant and the panoramic view along the way is magnificent.

	T	F
1. The Statue faces towards the East Sea.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. People can climb up inside the statue to its highest point.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. People can stand on the balconies inside the shoulders of the statue to view the whole city of Vung Tau.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. Recent construction of a pathway has made the view of the surrounding landscape more splendid.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. The statue is thirty-eight metres high from the ground.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. Only a small number of people can climb up the staircase at the same time.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7. This is the largest sculpture in Viet Nam.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8. It may take you thirty minutes to walk from the ground to the top of the mountain. <input type="checkbox"/>		

IX. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. Although/ living/ city/ have/ many advantages/ there/ disadvantages/ too.

2. Cost/ living/ very high/ city/ because/ not goods/ very expensive.

3. Environment/ polluted/ dust, smoke, garbage and dioxide gases/ factories/ and/ streets/ dirty and unclean.

4.As/ there/ a lot/ vehicles and people/ road/ city/ always busy/ noisy.

5.Therefore/ it/ hard/ lead/ healthy life/ city.

TEST 2 (UNIT 2)

I.Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- 1.A. fabulous B. packed C. asset D. canal
2.A. metro B. ocean C. cosmopolitan D. local
3.A. delicious B. facility C. city D. place

II.Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- 4.A. skyscraper B. convenience C. resident D. vehicle
5.A. affordable B. environment C. variety D. indicator

III.Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- 6.The architectsgot inspired to use the lotus flower in the design for the _____.
A. city B. skyline C. skyscraper D. downtown
7.Villagers are morekind, friendly and warm-hearted than city _____.
A. dwellers B. foreigners C. beginners D. movers
8.You can see the _____of the suburbs in Ho Chi Minh City with many apartment buildings, supermarkets, shopping centres, and schools.
A. urban area B. convenience C. urban sprawl D. living condition
9.Dong Khoi street is the main shopping street in the _____of downtown in Ho Chi Minh City.
A. mind B. heart C. head D. spot
10.Opened in 1937, the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco still ranks among the top 10 _____bridge spans in the world.
A. long B. longer C. mostly long D. longest
11.No city in America has _____monuments and museums into one area as Washington, DC.
A. as much B. such many C. as many D. a few
12.The new student was very shy at the beginning, but then he _____well with everyone.
A. got on B. went on C. got over D. cheered up
13.The police never _____all hope of finding the lost child.
A. stops B. think over C. grow up D. give up
14.He'll be very upset if his employer _____his offer.
A. pulls down B. finds out C. turns off D. turns down
15. It's time to say goodbye, but I'm _____meeting you all again soon.
A. looking forward to B. getting on with C. keep up with D. put up with

IV.Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

<i>commercial</i>	<i>increasing</i>	<i>residential</i>	<i>multinational</i>
<i>national</i>	<i>iconic</i>	<i>important</i>	<i>financial</i>

People in Ho Chi Minh are determined to integrate into the world while maintaining the Vietnamese identity. Therefore, they have decided to use image of lotus bud, considered by many as Vietnam's (16)_____ flower, to be the main inspiration for the architectural design. Ho Chi Minh City's Bitexco Financial Tower is completed as Viet Nam is on its way to recover from the global (17)_____ crisis. This coincides a(n) (18)_____ demand from (19)_____ business circles for office space.

Any city you can think of has its (20)_____ buildings. For example in Singapore, it is Marina - an icon for entertainment. In Ho Chi Minh City, it is a demand to create something that everyone remembers and keeps them reminded of the city.

V. Rewrite each sentence so that it has a similar meaning and contains the word in brackets.

1. Ann is very upset because the local authorities have rejected her proposals to install solar panels to supply electricity for traffic lights. (**down**)

2. A committee has been established to examine the question. (**set**)

3. Our class football team lost the match, so we tried to encourage them. (**up**)

4. "Can I wear jeans at the wedding party?" - "Of course not. You'll have to put on smart clothes." (**up**)

5. Before I come to a decision, I'll have to consider their offer very carefully. (**over**)

VI. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each questions.

Ho Chi Minh City's Coffee Culture

Ho Chi Minh City is a metropolis where life is very busy and hasty. The best way to enjoy the balance in your mind in such a busy city is to sit on the balcony of one of the numerous coffee houses scattered throughout the city. In this way you will be out of the crowd but able to look down on the street below. You will also be drinking the beverage that must be at least partly responsible for the kinetic energy that has transformed this city into one of the busiest commercial centres of Southeast Asia in just 20 years – it is coffee.

The classic Vietnamese coffee served in this city comprises strong coffee, dripped from a small metal filter into a cup containing a quarter as much sweetened condensed milk, then stirred and poured over ice in a glass.

Coffee was introduced to Viet Nam by the French in the late 19th century, but the country quickly became a big exporter.

At Trung Nguyen Coffee - the Vietnamese equivalent of Starbucks, with a chain of cafés across the city - the coffee menu stretches to five pages. The varieties of Vietnamese coffee produced by Trung Nguyen deserve exploration. They come with different bean combinations and recipes, and nice names such as "Success", "Creation", "Discover" and "Thought". The "Passiona", another brand of Trung Nguyen, has been promoted for women with the promise that drinking this type of coffee would maintain perfect skin and a life of "passion and success".

36. Coffee is considered ____.

- A. the biggest part of Viet Nam's exports
- B. part of the kinetic energy of Ho Chi Minh City
- C. the symbol of the busy and hasty life
- D. part of the French culture

37. When you sit on the balcony of a coffee shop enjoying a cup of coffee, you can ____.

- A. watch the busiest commercial centres of Southeast Asia
- B. drink Starbucks coffee
- C. taste all types of the classic Vietnamese coffee
- D. relax for a while

38. We can infer from paragraph 2 that the classic Vietnamese coffee served in Ho Chi Minh City may be ____.

- A. sweet
- B. light
- C. colourless
- D. often hot

39. All of the following are true about Trung Nguyen Coffee EXCEPT that ____.

- A. it is considered equivalent to Starbucks in Viet Nam.
- B. it offers several types of coffee for customers to enjoy
- C. its recipes stretch to five pages

D. some types have impressive names

40. The "Passiona" for women promises that by drinking this type of coffee women may have all of the following EXCEPT that _____.

A. they will become more interested in the life

B. they will be more successful in their life

C. they will have perfect skin

D. they will keep their skin lively

VII. Read the passage, and answer the questions.

City Life or Country Life?

Which place is the better - the city or the country? Two American teenagers talk about where they live.

Leo, 16: I live in New York and it's great. There are huge shopping centres and interesting places to go. My mum loves all the art galleries and museums, but I like Central Park where I go skateboarding. It's big enough to get away from the noise and traffic. The country isn't for me. It isn't exciting enough for people of my age. Most people don't live close enough to their friends to have enough of a good social life. It's too quiet and too boring. City life is the best.

Amelie, 14: I live on a ranch in the country, in Colorado. In the summer, we go hiking in the mountains, and in the winter I go snowboarding. I really like it because it's relaxing and quiet. I can't imagine life in the city. It isn't safe enough to walk around alone and it's too dangerous to cycle in the streets because of the traffic. Overall, I think the city is too noisy, too dirty, too crowded and too expensive. I prefer country life!

1. What does Leo like about New York?

2. What doesn't he like about the country?

3. What does Amelie like doing in the summer?

4. What does she like doing in the winter?

5. What doesn't she like about the city?

VIII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

One of the World's Best Cities

With a population of about 2.6 million people, Vancouver is the largest city in Western Canada. Vancouver is in the southwest of Canada, and it is only a few hours of driving away from the American border.

Vancouver is popular because it combines so many things. It is a huge, modern city. On the other hand, it is also one of North America's most beautiful areas. The natural beauty around Vancouver is famous all around the world.

Vancouver is right next to the Rocky Mountains, so it is wonderful for skiing and snowboarding. There aren't the only winter sports you can do there. If you can name a winter sport, then you probably do that sport in Vancouver. After all, the 2010 Winter Olympic were there. Vancouver is also great for hiking, jogging, and skateboarding. It even has beaches. The beaches aren't the best in the world, but they are clean and pretty.

Another place that you have to visit in Vancouver is Stanley Park. This is a public park that is **a stone's throw** from downtown. However, the park is completely surrounded by the Pacific Ocean. The nature in Stanley Park is beautiful. **It is close to downtown, it feels like it is 100 kilometres away.** The park also has playgrounds, gardens, beaches, tennis courts, and even an aquarium.

Vancouver is something for everybody. It is no wonder that people think it is one of the world's best cities.

1. What does the passage say about Vancouver's beaches?

A. They are the world's best beaches.

B. They are terrible beaches.

C. They are pretty good beaches.

D. Nobody goes to those beaches.

2. Which of the following is not near Vancouver?
- A. The Rocky Mountains B. The American border
C. The Pacific Ocean D. The Atlantic Ocean
3. What does the sentence "It is close to downtown, but it feels like it is 100 kilometres away" in paragraph 4 mean?
- A. Stanley Park is 100 kilometres long.
B. Stanley Park is close to downtown, but it feels like a very different place.
C. Stanley Park is far from downtown, but it feels like it is very close.
D. Stanley Park is more than 100 years old.
4. Which of the following is NOT popular in Vancouver?
- A. football B. winter sports C. skateboarding D. jogging
5. What could replace the phrase "a stone's throw" in paragraph 4?
- A. an act of throwing a stone B. a little bit long distance
C. moving very quickly D. a short distance

IX. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but have to use all the words given.

1. Hoi An/ most beautiful town/ Viet Nam.

2. If/ you/ get there/ full moon day/ all lights/ turned off.

3. Only lanterns/ hung/ and/ view/ spectacular.

4. It/ more fabulous/ when/ you/ stand/ pavement/ and/ watch people/ by.

5. Tourists/ backpackers/ wonderful time/ Hoi An.

TEST 3 UNIT 2

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. a. <u>child</u> hood | b. <u>ch</u> ampagne | c. <u>ch</u> apter | d. <u>ch</u> arity |
| 2. a. <u>c</u> ulture | b. <u>p</u> opular | c. <u>r</u> egular | d. <u>f</u> abulous |
| 3. a. <u>c</u> onflict | b. <u>f</u> orbidden | c. <u>r</u> eliable | d. <u>d</u> etermine |
| 4. a. <u>l</u> ighthouse | b. <u>h</u> eritage | c. <u>h</u> otel | d. <u>h</u> our |
| 5. a. <u>c</u> onducts | b. <u>r</u> eturns | c. <u>w</u> anders | d. <u>w</u> onders |

II. Choose the word that has the main stress placed differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. negative | b. determine | c. forbidden | d. attraction |
| 2. a. access | b. wander | c. conduct | d. asset |
| 3. a. cosmopolitan | b. communication | c. multicultural | d. metropolitan |
| 4. a. acceptable | b. affordable | c. reliable | d. fashionable |
| 5. a. skyscraper | b. populous | c. financial | d. fabulous |

III. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

- Every time I fly to the United States, I get really bad _____.
a. asthma b. jet lag c. confusion d. recreation
- Leave the ironing _____ - I'll do it later.
a. for the time being b. from time to time c. in any time d. in the nick of time
- These factors contribute _____ making city life more difficult for its residents.
a. in b. with c. to d. on
- Tower blocks from the 60s and 70s could be _____ after Grenfell Tower fire.
a. got down b. let down c. turned down d. pulled down
- The trip to the National Gallery has been _____ until next Friday.

- a. put off b. looked into c. turned up d. found out

6. The street food in Hoi An is delicious and _____.
a. available b. fabulous c. affordable d. fascinating
7. "Thanks for giving me a ride to work today."
"_____ I was heading this direction anyway."
a. You don't need to. b. Yes, thanks. c. No worries. d. I'd love to.
8. "_____?" "Everything is fine. How about you?"
a. How old are you? b. How's it going?
c. What's your life? d- What's the matter?
9. Life in Ho Chi Minh City is _____ than we thought at first.
a. far the busier b. the more busier c. much more busy d. much busier
10. Of the cities we surveyed, Singapore was _____ the worst rated by its residents for culture.
a. a bit b. a lot c. much d. by far

IV. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

1. French bakers are fighting for the traditional baguette to be given UNESCO World Heritage _____.
a. site b. status c. admission d. recognition
2. The government has done nothing to resolve the _____ over nurses' pay.
a. conflict b. fight c. crash d. war
3. They see the outdoors as a _____ activity, not a job opportunity.
a. exhausted b. international c. recreational d. volunteering
4. Savannah is one of the best _____ cities for job growth.
a. part b. whole c. full d. medium-sized
5. The railway station was criticized for its lack of disabled _____.
a. facilities b. system c. schedule d. preparation
6. About 85 per cent of city _____ breathe heavily polluted air.
a. villagers b. livers c. dwellers d. members
7. Dublin was a very different place in those days, like a village, not the wonderful _____ city it is now.
a. rural b. cosmopolitan c. reliable d. pleasant
8. We are _____ a survey to find out what our customers think of their local bus service.
a. affording b. indicating c. considering d. conducting
9. We are looking for someone who is _____ and hard-working.
a. hopeful b. lacked c. reliable d. smooth
10. It is difficult to _____ the exact cause of the illness.
a. attract b. forbid c. take d. determine
11. Sacramento's central location and low cost of living make this place a _____ city.
a. fabulous b. forbidden c. poor d. determining
12. How can we encourage people to get along with each other in this _____ society?
a. considerable b. multicultural c. rural d. crashing
13. Some workers can only afford homes outside _____ areas.
a. outskirts b. rural c. growing d. metropolitan
14. This is a top-quality product at a very _____ price.
a. high b. costly c. affordable d. effective

V. Complete the sentences with the suitable form of the adjectives or adverbs in brackets.

1. Tokyo is one of _____ cities in the world. (liveable)
2. You should go by train, it would be much _____. (cheap)
3. Universal Studios is by far _____ place to visit in Singapore. (good)
4. The price of electronic devices in Vietnam is not _____ that in Japan. (reasonable)

- Today is _____ day I've had in a long time. (bad)
- Your team is much _____ today than last week. (lucky)
- Of the four participants, Bill is _____ experienced. (little)
- I didn't want to wake anybody up, so I came in _____ I could. (quietly)
- I ran pretty far yesterday, but I ran even a lot _____ today. (far)
- Singapore is the second _____ destination in Asia. (popular)

VI. Complete the sentences with correct form of verbs.

- People tend _____ (think) that the problem will never affect them.
- My parents advised me _____ (learn) English as soon as possible.
- Many young people spend the whole day _____ (play) online games.
- It took me a whole day _____ (travel) to Dalat last week.
- I can't see the attraction of _____ (sit) on a beach all day.
- A positive aspect of education is that it contributes to _____ (confirm) one's identity.
- I like to listen to the birds _____ (sing) when I get up early in the morning.
- The team has tried their best _____ (perform) in the final round.
- Do the plants need _____ (water) every day?
- If you can, please _____ (give) me more information about the kids club at Al Raha Beach Hotel.

VII. Use a phrasal verb from the list to replace the words underlined.

went on	go over	got on with	getting over	look forward to
think over	came across	knock down	looked after	turned down

- She's never had a good relationship with _____ her sister.
- Maria is slowly recovering from _____ her illness.
- I found _____ this article while I was doing my project.
- Could you examine _____ this report and correct any mistakes?
- He refused _____ the job because it sounded boring.
- She continued _____ talking about her trip although everyone found it tiring.
- I need some time to consider _____ his proposal.
- My mother says she's feeling happy and excited about _____ meeting you.
- The city is going to destroy _____ the old train station and build a new library.
- Our neighbour took care of _____ our cats while we were away.

VIII. Choose the correct verb from the box to complete each phrasal verb. Make an changes if necessary.

set	cheer	pull	find	dress
take	turn	turn	go	get

- Kate and her partner are _____ up their own printing business.
- Many of those old buildings will soon be _____ down.
- The weather became so bad that they had to _____ back.
- You'd better get dressed and _____ up. The guests are coming any minute.
- One of the actors was unwell and couldn't _____ on with the performance.
- They were _____ up in old sheets, pretending to be ghosts.
- Please _____ your shoes off before entering the temple.
- We may never _____ out the truth about what happened.
- It's taken me ages to _____ over the flu.
- Richard had _____ up on Christmas Eve with Tony.

IX. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

- Summer _____ (really/ not begin) in Rio de Janeiro until late November.
- What tends _____ (happen) is that the poorest families end up in the worst housing.

3. They told me they _____ (go) on a trip to Pattaya the previous summer.
4. The Statue of Liberty _____ (originally/ design) for the Suez Canal in Egypt
5. Many scientists _____ (still/ search) for life in other parts of the universe.
6. He _____ (visit) Paris three times this year.
7. The kids _____ (play) in the garden when it suddenly began to rain.
8. As soon as Daddy and Jonathan finish _____ (get) dressed, we'll go to the amusement park.

X. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Hoi An is known as the centre for very _____ custom-made clothing. (afford)
2. He was a very _____ and honest man who would never betray anyone. (rely)
3. Toronto is officially named the most _____ city in Canada. (culture)
4. The town's most popular _____ is the Marine Science Museum. (attract)
5. The Province Of Luxemburg is the largest and least _____ of the nine provinces of Belgium. (populate)
6. The illustration shows examples of _____ dress in the late 1840s. (fashion)
7. The disease spread quickly among the poor slum _____ of the city. (dwell)
8. I often think of the _____ time we had all together in Boston last spring. (please)

XI. Choose the correct answers to complete the passage.

Tokyo is Japan's capital and largest city. It's also one of the largest cities in the world. (1) _____ in 1457, Tokyo has grown into a major part of a (2) _____ region that also includes the cities of Yokohama and Kawasaki. The metropolitan region, also known as Greater Tokyo, has over 30 million residents, (3) _____ makes it one of the largest metropolitan areas in the world.

Tokyo today is a very welcoming metropolis. Tourists (4) _____ about the street, taking in Japanese culture. Hundreds of shrines and temples adorn the city. Shinto and Buddhism are the major (5) _____ of Japan. Tourists can also experience Japanese cuisine. There are thousands of restaurants (6) _____ Tokyo. You can choose from noodle shops, sushi bars, or even McDonald's with special Japan-(7) _____ items found only in Japan.

If you ever have the chance to visit Japan, make sure you stop in Tokyo for (8) _____ a few days.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. a. Found | b. Founded | c. Founding | d. Finded |
| 2. a. metropolitan | b. influence | c. attractive | d. complex |
| 3. a. what | b. which | c. that | d. this |
| 4. a. run | b. show | c. drive | d. roam |
| 5. a. provinces | b. attractions | c. festivals | d. religions |
| 6. a. at | b. in | c. on | d. of |
| 7. a. inspire | b. inspiring | c. inspired | d. inspiration |
| 8. a. at time | b. at all | c. at least | d. at first |

XII. Read the text then answer the questions.

Toronto is one of the world's most multicultural cities. Almost half of its population are immigrants. You'll hear more than 140 languages and dialects spoken on the streets in this "City of Neighborhoods". It's the most populous city in Canada (more than 5 million in the Greater Toronto Area) and the province of Ontario's economic engine. Toronto's motto is "Diversity Our Strength". Toronto prides itself on its wide range of cultures, languages, food and arts.

Visit Toronto, and one of the first things you'll notice is that the city's appeal lies in its citizens' friendliness: ask for directions, and you'll be helped. Along with its highly artistic culture and fascinating museums that proudly display the country's history, it's clear that a Toronto trip has something for everyone.

Although Toronto's climate is partially moderated by its Great Lakes location, it is more extreme than Bordeaux's and Christchurch's, with somewhat hotter summers and considerably colder winters. Summertime in Toronto is festival time. Just about every weekend, and some weekdays, you'll find one happening. If crowds aren't your thing, avoid Caribana festival (July 28 through July 31), when the city greets more than one million visitors.

1. Where is Toronto?

2. What is the population of the Greater Toronto Area?

3. What makes Toronto proud of itself?

4. What is one of the first things in Toronto that appeals tourists?

5. Which of Toronto proudly displays the country's history?

6. How is the climate in Toronto?

7. When is the festival time in Toronto?

8. How many visitors does the city greet in Caribana festival?

XIII. Read the text carefully, then choose the correct answers.

Life in the big city is face-paced, fun and exciting. There are countless job opportunities and activities to occupy your time. However, with the good, there also comes the bad. Although the big city has more job opportunities; there are also more people competing for a single job. This can make your job search frustrating. Oddly enough, you will see hundreds, if not thousands of jobs available each week, but you still might remain unemployed, especially when the economy is down. In addition, the cost of living is typically higher in big cities, and it can cost you an arm and a leg for a small apartment in a decent area of the city, not to mention other costs to fulfill your basic demands. Diversity is a good thing, but the amount of people can be a bit overwhelming if you are not accustomed to it. There will always be crowds and always be people around. Moreover, traffic can be a nightmare in the big city. It can get so bad that it can turn you into an evil person. If you hate driving in traffic, then the big city life is not for you. Heavy traffic also contributes to the pollution, which is one of the biggest disadvantages of living in the city. Obviously, our health is affected most with certain diseases relating to respiratory system and other body parts. A lot of premature deaths are supposed to be the result of long-term exposure to small particles. Most importantly, there is always more crime in a big city, causing you second case your decision for living in a big city. You are much more likely to be a victim of a crime living in a big city than in a small town.

1. According to the passage, some good things of living in the city are _____.
 - a. excellent educational system and recreational activities
 - b. excellent educational system and countless job opportunities
 - c. countless job opportunities and activities to occupy your time
 - d. a lot of kinds of entertainment and shopping centers
2. While big cities have more job opportunities, it also give _____.
 - a. more competition for a single job
 - b. higher salary
 - c. growing economic crisis
 - d. greater chances of being unemployed
3. What does the phrase "cost an arm and a leg" mean?

a. your legs and arms have good value	b. cost a small amount of money
c. you must work hard to earn money	d. cost a lot of money
4. According to the paragraph, city is not a perfect place for _____.

a. extroverted people	b. introverted people
c. people who hate driving in traffic	d. people who prefer a busy life
5. In the big city, people tend to _____ when traffic is getting heavy.

a. go crazy	b. get enough time to relax
c. wait a bit longer	d. slow down themselves

6. Which of the following sentences is NOT true?
 - a. Pollution causes health problems.
 - b. Cities are always crowded.
 - c. It costs a lot of money to live in a big city.
 - d. Crime is not a serious problem in big cities.

XIV. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first sentence.

1. I've never had to wait this long for a bus before.
→ This is _____
2. Remember to take note of what the tour guide said.
→ Remember to put _____
3. It took us more than 3 hours to discover the inner Hanoi.
→ We spent _____
4. No other book is more popular than Dickens' "David Copperfield".
→ Dickens' "David Copperfield" is _____
5. Why don't you consider our suggestion before making official decision?
→ Why don't you think _____
6. Watching TV is not as important as doing homework.
→ Doing homework _____
7. My friend plays piano brilliantly.
→ My friend is _____
8. I find most of the young men of my own age so boring.
→ I feel _____

XV. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word in capital.

1. This gym is less convenient than the one near my house. (AS)
→ This gym _____
2. Mount Everest is higher than any other mountain in the world. (HIGHEST)
→ Mount Everest _____
3. His writings have influenced modern Christian theology. (BEEN)
→ Modern Christian theology _____
4. The group plans to establish an import business. (SET)
→ The group plans to _____
5. His father is the most capable man in the office. (MORE)
→ No other _____
6. The product quickly made an impact on the market. (INFLUENCE)
→ The product quickly _____
7. Jonah had obviously made an effort to put on smart clothes for the occasion. (UP)
→ Jonah had obviously made an effort to _____
8. Losing weight is not so easy as putting on weight. (DIFFICULT)
→ Losing weight _____

XVI. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first one.

1. Real Madrid is not as good as Real Zaragoza.
→ Real Zaragoza is _____
2. He thinks no language in the world is more difficult than Chinese.
→ He thinks Chinese is _____
3. He is the tallest boy in his class.
→ No one in _____
4. She sings better than anybody else in the class.
→ She is _____
5. Munnar is prettier than most other hill stations in India.
→ Munnar is _____

6. Mary thinks Melbourne is the most “liveable” city in Australia.

→ Mary thinks Melbourne _____

7. Lifestyle in Malaysia is the same as Thailand.

→ Lifestyle in Malaysia is _____

8. Beijing is much busier than Ho Chi Minh City.

→ Ho Chi Minh City isn't _____

UNIT 3: TEEN STRESS AND PRESSURE

A. VOCABULARY

1. adolescence (n)	/ˌædəˈlesns/:	giai đoạn vị thành niên
2. adulthood (n)	/ˈædʌlthʊd/:	giai đoạn trưởng thành
3. calm (adj)	/kɑ:m/:	bình tĩnh
4. cognitive skill	/ˈkɒgnətɪv skɪl/:	kỹ năng tư duy
5. concentrate (v)	/kɒnsntreɪt/:	tập trung
6. confident (adj)	/ˈkɒnfɪdənt/:	tự tin
7. delighted (adj)	/dɪˈlaɪtɪd/:	vui sướng
8. depressed (adj)	/dɪˈprest/:	tuyệt vọng
9. embarrassed (adj)	/ɪmˈbærəst/:	xấu hổ
10. emergency (n)	/ɪˈmɜːdʒənsi/:	tình huống khẩn cấp
11. frustrated (adj)	/frʌˈstreɪtɪd/:	bực bội (vì không giải quyết được việc gì)
12. helpline (n)	/ˈhelplaɪn/:	đường dây nóng trợ giúp
13. house-keeping skill	/haʊs-ˈkiːpɪŋ skɪl/:	kỹ năng làm việc nhà
14. independence (n)	/ˌɪndɪˈpendəns/:	sự độc lập, tự lập
15. informed decision (n)	/ɪnˈfɔːmd dɪˈsɪʒn/:	quyết định có cân nhắc
16. left out (adj)	/left aʊt/:	cảm thấy bị bỏ rơi, bị cô lập
17. life skill	/laɪf skɪl/:	kỹ năng sống
18. relaxed (adj)	/rɪˈlæksd/:	thoải mái, thư giãn
19. resolve conflict (v)	/rɪˈzɒlv ˈkɒnflɪkt/:	giải quyết xung đột
20. risk taking (n)	/rɪsk teɪkɪŋ/:	liều lĩnh
21. self-aware (adj)	/self-əˈweə(r)/:	tự nhận thức, ngộ ra
22. self-disciplined (adj)	/self-ˈdɪsəplɪnd/:	tự rèn luyện
23. stressed (adj)	/strest/:	căng thẳng, mệt mỏi
24. tense (adj)	/tens/:	căng thẳng
25. worried (adj)	/ˈwɜːrɪd/:	lo lắng

B. GRAMMAR

I. ÔN TẬP CÂU GIÁN TIẾP (REPORTED SPEECH)

1. Định nghĩa

Định nghĩa	Ví dụ
- Câu trực tiếp (Direct speech) là chính xác lời nói của ai đó. Chúng ta thường dùng dấu (“/”) để trích dẫn lời nói trực tiếp - Câu tường thuật (hay còn gọi là Câu gián tiếp) là câu thuật lại lời nói trực tiếp do một người khác phát biểu.	- They said, “We will visit her” (<i>Direct Speech</i>) -> They said (that) they would visit her. (<i>Reported Speech / Indirect Speech</i>)

2. Câu trần thuật gián tiếp (Reported Statement)

Khi muốn thay đổi 1 câu trần thuật trực tiếp sang 1 câu trần thuật gián tiếp, chúng ta dùng động từ “say/ tell” để giới thiệu. Đồng thời cần áp dụng các quy tắc sau:

a. Thay đổi thì của động từ

❖ Nếu động từ giới thiệu ở thì hiện tại (say/ tell) thì động từ trong câu gián tiếp giữ nguyên thì trong câu trực tiếp.

Ví dụ: “I always drink coffee in the morning”, she says

-> She says that she always drinks coffee in the morning.

❖ Nếu động từ giới thiệu ở thì quá khứ (said/ told) thì động từ trong câu gián tiếp cần thay đổi như sau:

Thì trong lời nói trực tiếp	Thì trong lời nói gián tiếp
Hiện tại đơn ‘ I like science’	-> Quá khứ đơn He said (that) he liked sciences
Hiện tại tiếp diễn “I am staying for a few days”	-> Quá khứ tiếp diễn She said (that) she was staying for a few days.
Hiện tại hoàn thành “Nick has left”	-> Quá khứ hoàn thành She said (that) Nick had left.
Quá khứ đơn “Nick left this morning”.	-> Quá khứ hoàn thành She told me (that) Nick had left that morning
Quá khứ tiếp diễn “I was doing his homework”.	-> Quá khứ tiếp diễn / Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn She said (that) she was doing her homework/ she had been doing her homework
Will “ Man will travel to Mars”	-> Would He said (that) man would travel to Mars
Can “We can swim”	-> Could They told us (that) they could swim.
May “We may live on the moon”	-> Might He said (that) we might live on the moon

b. Đối ngôi của đại từ nhân xưng, tính từ và đại từ sở hữu

Trong lời nói trực tiếp	Trong lời nói gián tiếp
i	-> he/ she
we	-> they
you	-> I/he/she
my	-> his/ her
our	->their
your	->my/his/her
mine	-> his/hers
ours	->theirs

c. Thay đổi các trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn.

Trong lời nói trực tiếp	Trong lời nói gián tiếp
now	->then
today	->that day
here	->there
this week	->that week
tomorrow	->the following day/ the next day
yesterday	->the day before/ the previous day
last month	->the month before/ the previous month
tonigh	->that night
ago	->before
next week	->the following week/ the week after
these	->those

Ví dụ:

He said to me, “I and you will go to with her father next week.”

He told me (that) he and I would go with her father the following week.

3. Câu hỏi gián tiếp (Reported questions)

a .Các quy tắc khi chuyển câu hỏi trực tiếp sang câu hỏi gián tiếp

- Động từ tường thuật được sử dụng trong Câu hỏi Gián tiếp thường là : *asked, required, wondered, wanted to know*.

- Áp dụng qui tắc đổi Đại từ nhân xưng, tính từ sở hữu, đại từ sở hữu giống câu Trần thuật Gián tiếp.

- Áp dụng qui tắc đổi Thì của động từ giống câu Trần thuật Gián tiếp.

- Áp dụng qui tắc đổi các Trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn giống câu Trần thuật gián tiếp

- Câu hỏi chuyển sang câu gián tiếp phải được chuyển về dạng KHẲNG ĐỊNH và lược bỏ dấu hỏi chấm.

b. Các dạng câu hỏi gián tiếp

Dạng	Cấu trúc
Câu hỏi Wh-Questions (câu hỏi bắt đầu bằng các từ để hỏi như What, where, when, why, who..)	S + asked/wondered/wanted to know + O + Wh- +S +V... Ví dụ: He said to me, "Why did you go with her father last week?" -> He asked me why I had gone with her father the week before
Câu hỏi Yes/ No Questions" Dùng "if hoặc whether" để bắt đầu câu hỏi Yes/ No gián tiếp	S + asked/ wondered/wanted to know + O + if/ whether + S + V... Ví dụ: He said to me, "Will you go with her father next week." -> He asked me if/ whether I would go with her father the following week.

▪ BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

- Bài 1** always says that he (is/was) very proud of me
- Mary told me she (will/would) visit me this summer
- Jim wonders whether Jane (liked/ likes) him or not
- My teacher (says/said) that we had to finish our assignment on time
- They told me that the (are/ were) going to move their house the following month.
- My sister said she (can/ could) win the competition if she tried her best.
- I told Jim that he (is/ was) the most intelligent person I knew.
- The mechanic said that it (cost/ costs) up to \$50 to fix my car.
- The (say/ said) that they would help me if they had free time.
- Jim said that he (has just got / had just got) a new bike.

Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng:

- Bài 2** told me: " They will build a new bridge across this river this year".
A. Jim said to me that they will build a new bridge across this river this year.
B. Jim said to me that they would build a new bridge across this river this year.
C. Jim said to me that they would build a new across that river that year.
- My mother often tells me : ' You need to take care of yourself'.
A. My mother often tells me that I need to take care of yourself.
B. My mother often tells me that I need to take care of herself
C. My mother often tells me that I need to take care of myself
- Peter informed me : " They canceled the meeting yesterday".
A. Peter informed me that they canceled the meeting yesterday.
B. Peter informed me that they had canceled the meeting yesterday.
C. Peter informed me that they had canceled the meeting the day before.
- Peter and Jane said to me: ' Our wedding will be held next week".
A. Peter and Jane said to me that my wedding would be held next week.
B. Peter and Jane said to me that their wedding would be held the next week.
C. Peter and Jane said to me that their wedding would be held the following week.
- I told him: ' I am busy this week so I can't come to your party.'"
A. I told him that I was busy this week so I can't come to my party.
B. I told him that I was busy that week so I couldn't come to my party
C. I told him that I was busy that week so I couldn't come to his party.
- The doctor said: ' You will suffer from diabetes if you don't reduce sugar in your daily meals"

- A. The doctor said I would suffer from diabetes if I didn't reduce sugar in my daily meals
 - B. The doctor said I would suffer from diabetes if I don't reduce sugar in my daily meals
 - C. The doctor said I suffered from diabetes if I didn't reduce sugar in my daily meals.
7. Peter asked me: "would you go to the prom with me?"
- A. Peter asked me if I would go to the prom with me.
 - B. Peter asked me whether I would go to the prom with him
 - C. Peter asked me whether would I go to the prom with him
8. My father asked me: "where are you going?"
- A. My father asked me where was I going.
 - B. My father asked me where you were going
 - C. My father asked me where I was going.
9. Oliver asked me: "What will you do if you have a day off?"
- A. Oliver asked me what would I do if I have a day off.
 - B. Oliver asked me what I would do if I had a day off
 - C. Oliver asked me what would I do if I have a day off.
10. My brother asked me: "How can I open this box?"
- A. My brother asked me how I could open that box.
 - B. My brother asked me how to open that box.
 - C. My brother asked me how he could open this box.

Gạch chân lỗi sai trong các câu sau và sửa lại cho đúng.

- Bài 3**
1. Peter asked me if I could help her do gardening tomorrow. _____
 2. Jim wondered if to buy a new radio or fix his old one. _____
 3. Peter aske me was I free that weeked. _____
 4. I wanted to know who was the winner of that competion. _____
 5. They said that Peter can't make it to the final show. _____
 6. My manager aske if I have finished my work yet. _____
 7. Peter said that he was going to get married following month. _____
 8. She asked me what had I done the previous day. _____
 9. Now I just don't know whether to leave or stayed. _____
 10. Mr. Brown said that he would get promotion by the end of this year. _____

Bài 4 Chuyển những câu trực tiếp dưới đây thành câu gián tiếp.

1. Many doctor say: "Teenagers undergo many physical and mental changes during their puberty".

2. Sometimes my mother tells me: "You don't have to be so tense".

3. Peter said: "I am looking forward to my grandfather's gift".

4. "If I pass this test, my father will buy me a new skateboard" Peter said.

5. I told my teacher: "I forgot to do my homework".

6. "Mr. Brown owns two cars and three houses". Jim said.

7. She said to me: "I can't do it by myself".

8. My mother said: "I will go on a business trip next week".

9. My manager said: "Someone broke into our office yesterday".

10. He told me: "You may have trouble if you don't do your homework".

11. The singer said: "I started my career three years ago".
12. Jim told me: "It is not my book, it's yours."
13. "I have just received a postcard from my foreign friend." Ann said to me.
14. "This story happened long ago." He said.
15. Peter said: "I hope it will be sunny tomorrow."

Bài 5 Chuyển những câu hỏi trực tiếp dưới đây thành câu gián tiếp.

1. Jim asked his girlfriend: "How many pairs of shoes do you have?"
2. "Are you going to London next week?" Peter asked Jane.
3. "Have you done the laundry?" Mom asked my sister.
4. "Does your brother live in London, Peter?" Jane asked.
5. "What are you doing now?" Jim asked his sister.
6. "Did you enjoy the party last night?" my classmate asked me.
7. My friends always ask me: "What genre of music do you like the most?"
8. "What have you done to cope with your work stress?" My doctor asked me.
9. "What do you often do if you are sad?" Jim asked me.
10. Jim asked me: "Who did you run into yesterday?"

II

**TỪ ĐỀ HỎI ĐỨNG TRƯỚC ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU CÓ "TO"
(QUESTION WORDS BEFORE TO – INFINITIVE)**

Cách dùng	Ví dụ
<p>Ta dùng cấu trúc câu các từ để hỏi what, when, where, who, how + to V (động từ nguyên mẫu có to) trong lời nói gián tiếp để:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Diễn tả những tình huống khó khăn hoặc không chắc chắn. - tường thuật lại câu hỏi về một việc gì đó nên được làm. 	<p>We don't know who to contact. (Chúng tôi không biết liên hệ với ai.)</p> <p>She can't decide what to do (Cô ấy không thể quyết định nên làm gì.)</p> <p>Tell me when to pay (Hãy cho tôi biết phải thanh toán vào lúc nào.)</p> <p>He shows me where to get tickets. (Anh ấy chỉ cho tôi nơi mua vé.)</p>

Ta không thể sử dụng “why” trước “to V”	No one could explain why we had to come there. (Không ai có thể giải thích lý do chúng ta phải đến đó.) No one could explain why to come there. -> SAI
Trước các từ để hỏi, ta có thể sử dụng các động từ như ask, (not) decide, discover, discuss, explain, find out, forget, (not) know, learn, remember, say, think, understand, wonder, (not) be sure, have no idea, (not) tell...	We were wondering where to cook the dinner. (Chúng tôi đang phân vân liệu nấu bữa tối chỗ nào) Mike wants to know how to work the computer (Mike muốn biết cách làm việc với máy tính.) Have Mike and Lisa decided when to have their dinner? (Misa và Lisa đã quyết định khi nào ăn tối chưa?) I wasn't sure what to do (Tôi không biết phải làm gì.)
Để tường thuật lại dạng câu hỏi Yes/ No questions, ta dùng cấu trúc whether + to V . Lưu ý, “if” không được sử dụng trong trường hợp này.	We'll have to decide whether to go ahead with the timetable (or not). (Chúng ta sẽ phải quyết định liệu nên tiếp tục lịch trình này hay là không). We have to decide if to go ahead -> SAI. Mike wasn't sure whether to phone her immediately or not. (Mike không chắc liệu có nên gọi cho cô ấy ngay hay không.) I was wondering whether to order some coffee. (Tôi đã phân vân liệu có nên gọi cà phê không.) I didn't know whether to laugh or cry. (Tôi không biết liệu nên cười hay khóc)

▪ BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Chuyển những câu trực tiếp sau đây thành câu gián tiếp.

1. **Bài 6** 't have to do this if you don't really want to". Theu said to me.

2. "I saw Jim when I was walking home yesterday." He told me.

3. "Will you forgive Jim if he apologizes to you?" Jane asked me.

4. "Peter has been a friends of mine for 3 years." I told Jane

5. "Will be capable of winning this contest?" Jim wondered.

6. "There was a serious car accident right here last week" Josh said.

7. "I am frustrated that Jim forgot our date yesterday". Jane told me.

8. "This is the first time I've been to NYC". Peter said.

9. Mr Brown told his wife: "Our children have grown up, so you don't have to care much about them".

10. "What will you do if you win a lottery?" Peter asked me.

Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

Bài 7

1. Jim/ always/ want/ know/ whether/ he/ should/ study/ abroad/ or/ not.
2. When/ I / be/ small/ I/ tell/ my mother/ I / want/ be/ superman.
3. Jim/ be/ confused/ because/ he/ not/ sure/ what/ do/ now.
4. I / have/ no/ idea/ what/ they/ do/ at the moment.
5. Please / show/ me/ how/ get/ nearest/ pst office.
6. Now/ we/ have to/ decide/ where/ go/ and/ what/ do/ tomorrow.
7. You/ make/ up/ your/ mind/ where/ wpend/ your. Wummer/ yet?
8. I / cannot/ understand/ why/ Jim/ fall/ the/ final test.
9. Yesterday, my teacher/ carefully/ explain/ how/ young/ birds/ learn/ to/ fly

Bài 8 Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

Anxiety during puberty

Many psychologists believe that boys and girls are (1)_____ to anxiety when they experience puberty for a number of reasons. Puberty often starts at the middle of (2)_____ (from 15 to 17 years old) when people experience rapid changes in their body as well as their brain. Such changer may cause a lot of anxiety if adolescents are not (3)_____ of what they are undergoing. For girls, acne is always a big crisis and for boys, changes in their voice sometimes bother them. Those teenagers may lose their confidence because they are ashamed of the changes of apperance. Besides, the surge in hormones also (4)_____ to high level of anxiety of teenagers. During (5)_____, mood swing happens very often and teenagers easily get (6)_____ at tiny problems. It is necessary that parents fully understand their children to help them deal (7)_____ anxiety.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. near | B. gone | C. about | D. close |
| 2. A. adolescence | B. adolescent | C. adulthood | D. adult |
| 3. A. well-aware | B. well-understand | C. self-discipline | D. well-behaved |
| 4. A. comes | B. contributes | C. distributes | D. attributes |
| 5. A. adulthood | B. childhood | C. puberty | D. teenage |
| 6. A. interested | B. keen | C. frustrated | D. excited |
| 7. A. on | B. in | C. with | D. about |

Bài 9 Đọc đoạn văn sau, điền T (True) trước câu trả lời có nội dung đúng với nội dung bài đọc, điền F (False) trước câu có nội dung không đúng với nội dung bài đọc.

George is in his mid-adolescence and like many of his peers, he is undergoing great changes in his body as well as his brain. He and his friends are experiencing puberty, an important phase of devolopment of a person when physical and mental changes take place. Boys in particular may find numerous changes within themselves which they sometimes cannot understand properly without the guide of parent and other experienced adults. When boys enter their puberty, they often start taking interest in abstract concepts and subjects such as justice, politics and arts. They also begin to understand the world around them, planning out a life for themselves, having dreams and life goals to fulfill.

Along with a very new view of life and sense of self comes anxiety and confusion. Boys in their puberty develop a strong sense of personal identity. Therefore, they often try to get attention from other to prove themselves. They are also curious about the adult world. Sometimes, they can be misled by the negative things from the world around them. For example, boys start to smoke or drink because they are curious and they think they are cool to do so. They make a lot of friends and from peer groups. They may have good friends and they may not be mature enough to identify bad ones. In short, this is a period of experiencing new things and new people, both the good and the bad.

It is crucial that parents are ready for the changes of their boys so that they can help their boys go through this period. A cozy home environment where adolescents can stay comfortable and share their feelings and experience is important. Parents should be sensitive to provide reasonable guidelines. Force and punishments are not highly recommended in this phase as adolescents tend to be rebellious.

- _____ 1. There are only changes in a boy's body during his puberty.
- _____ 2. Boys can always understand their changer properly without the guide of parents and other experienced adults.
- _____ 3. When boys enter their puberty, they often lose interest in abstract concepts and subjects.
- _____ 4. Boys often plan their life before they enter puberty.
- _____ 5. Boys encounter anxiety and confusion during puberty.
- _____ 6. Boys may start to smoke or drink because of their curiosity.
- _____ 7. Boys only have bad experiences during adolescence.
- _____ 8. Force and punishment are highly advisable when dealing with boys in their puberty.

C.EXERCISES

TEST 1 (UNIT 3)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. columnist B. frustrated C. study D. adulthood
2. A. helpline B. empathise C. embarrassed D. depressed
3. A. tense B. decision C. skill D. house-keeping

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

4. A. neighbourhood B. assignment C. emotion D. supportive
5. A. experience B. emotional C. emergency D. favourable

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. Pressure _____ children to get into top schools has reached a crisis point.
A. at B. under C. on D. with
7. Perhaps what you're reading or hearing is boring, which makes it hard to _____ on the book or the conversation.
A. concentrate B. rely C. depend D. notice
8. A great way to improve _____ skills is to keep trying new things.
A. reason B. reasoned C. reasoning D. reasons'
9. As children move toward _____, they are less likely to ask for advice.
A. dependent B. dependence C. independent D. independence
10. Taking good notes _____ students to evaluate, organize and summarize information.
A. requests B. requires C. allows D. offers
11. Susan needs someone to show her how to _____ her anxiety and depression.
A. empathise B. try C. succeed D. manage
12. Mi asked what information she _____ that assignment.
A. need to be done B. needed doing C. need to do D. needed to do
13. My teacher told me that _____ attend the math course for the higher level programme that I _____ for.
A. can't - apply B. couldn't - apply C. can't - applied D. couldn't - had applied
14. My parents asked me to find out _____ it gave you so much trouble.
A. what B. which C. why D. where
15. I am not sure _____ I can't solve this problem.
A. how B. what C. who D. by whom

IV. Fill in each blank in the sentences with the correct word from the box.

<i>helpline</i>	<i>frustrated</i>	<i>tense</i>	<i>confident</i>	<i>adolescence</i>
<i>concentrate</i>	<i>independent</i>	<i>cognitive</i>	<i>sites</i>	<i>resolve</i>

1. _____ is a time when they're becoming more independent.

2. By age 16, most teens have had _____ development, and they have the ability to think abstractly.
3. It's important for students to _____ and avoid distractions when the teacher is presenting the lessons.
4. Most shy people wish they were more _____.
5. Adolescents can learn to _____ conflicts peacefully.
6. I was told I was shy as a child, which led me to feel _____ and anxious during social situations.
7. Children from northern provinces, especially mountainous areas, made the highest number of calls to the _____.
8. I have tried many advice _____ for teenagers.
9. Kids with low motivation get _____ easily, so teachers or parents should be good listeners.
10. Give students a little bit of freedom, and this will help them feel _____.

V. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

<i>place</i>	<i>demands</i>	<i>compete</i>	<i>exams</i>
<i>scores</i>	<i>choices</i>	<i>gain</i>	<i>tutor</i>

Nowadays, parents are determined to get their children into the highest performing school in their area. Many of these schools are seeing (1)_____ of children competing for each place and are setting ever more rigorous tests and (2)_____ to select their preferred students. These students may be as young as 9 or 10 when they start this process. In London, the pressure on children to succeed and (3)_____ a place at the "right" school has almost become out of control with experts predicting that this situation will only continue to worsen as the (4)_____ for school places grow. Employing a(n) (5)_____ for your child, which only a few years ago would have been seen as an unusual step, is now common for many parents.

VI. Rewrite the following in reported speech.

1. Mai said, "The stress of the entrance examinations made me physically ill."

2. "It breaks my heart to see her upset when she failed the exam," Nora's mother said.

3. "I feel stressed and tense to see that I can't get the perfect results, Phong," said Mi

4. Quan said, "Study stress has been a part of my life."

5. "I started experiencing symptoms of stress in grade 8," Phong said.

VII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D at best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Puberty is the time when your body grows from a child's to an adult's. You will know that you are going (1)_____ puberty by the way that your body changes.

If you are a boy, your shoulders will (2)_____ and your body will become more muscular. These changes are caused by the hormones (3)_____ your body begins producing in much larger amounts (4)_____ before.

Puberty (5)_____ over a number of years, and the age at which it starts and ends varies (6)_____. It generally begins somewhere between the ages of 7 and 13 for girls, and somewhere between the ages of 9 and 15 for boys, although it can be earlier or later for some (7)_____ in age is normal.

Sometimes, (8)_____, people pass this normal age range for puberty (9)_____ showing any signs of body changes. This is (10)_____ delayed puberty.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------|-----------|
| 1. A. at | B. in | C. through | D. out of |
| 2. A. widen | B. increase | C. expand | D. spread |
| 3. A. how | B. what | C. this | D. that |
| 4. A. more than | B. than | C. as well as | D. as |

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 5.A.survives | B.exists | C.begins | D.occurs |
| 6.A. wide | B.widely | C.width | D.widen |
| 7.A. period | B.offer | C.range | D.limit |
| 8.A. however | B.but | C.moreover | D.although |
| 9.A.refusing | B.avoiding | C.with | D.without |
| 10.A.call | B.called | C.being called | D.having called |

VIII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

You can do a few things to make homework less stressful. First, be sure you understand the assignment. Write it down in your notebook or day planner if you need to, and don't be afraid to ask questions about what is expected. It is much easier to take a minute to ask the teacher during or after class than to struggle to remember later that night! If you want, you can also ask how long the particular homework assignment should take to complete so you can plan your time.

Second, use any extra time you have in school to work on your homework. Many schools have libraries that are specifically designed to allow students to study or get homework done. The more work you can get done in school, the less you will have to do that night.

Third, pace yourself. If you don't finish your homework during school, think about how much you have left and what else going on that day, and then plan your time. Most middle students should have between 1 and 3 hours of homework a night. If it is a heavy homework day, you will need to devote more time to homework.

No one is expected to understand everything, and may be you need some help. The first place to turn for help is your teacher. But if you don't feel comfortable with your teacher? If you are in a big enough school, there may be other teachers who teach the same subject. Speak to other teachers directly and you may be in luck. Sometimes it just helps to have someone explain something in a different way. Moreover, you might also be able to get some help from another student. If there is someone you like who is a good student, think about asking that person if you can study together.

1. The most important thing that you should do when you get your assignment may be _____.

- | | |
|--|--|
| A.to know when you hand it in | B.to understand it and its requirements |
| C.to know how long it takes to complete it | D.to remember it in order to plan the time |

2. If you have any free time left at school, you should _____.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| A.use it to do your homework in the library | B.spend time with your friends |
| C.use it to understand the assignment | D.use it to make your day planner |

3. When students need some help, they should _____.

- | |
|--|
| A.never ask other teachers because it will hurt their own teachers |
| B.always turn to their own teachers for help |
| C.ask any good students at the subject in your school |
| D.go to their teachers or other teachers teaching the same subject |

4. The main idea of the first three paragraphs is _____.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| A.to get help when you need it | B.to do homework immediately |
| C.to create a homework plan | D.to ask your teachers for more explanation |

5. According to the passage, all of the following are correct EXCEPT that _____.

- | |
|---|
| A.it takes a student more than three hours a night if there is much homework |
| B.it is good to have the explanation in a different way |
| C.you only do your homework at home between 1 and 3 hours a night |
| D.it is very useful to take a minute to ask the teacher during or after class |

IX. Turn the following sentences into direct speech.

1. He told me to rest for a while.

2. The teacher told me that I hadn't done my work well.

3. My classmate told me he couldn't explain that rule to you.

4.The teacher told the class they would discuss that subject the next day.

5. His mother asked him not to make a mess in his room.

6He suggested that they should go to the cinema that night.

7. My friend told me to explain to him how to solve that problem.

8. The teacher gave us the permission to leave the room.

X.Rewrite the sentences using questions words and *to*-infinitives.

1. I don't know what I should review first for the coming test.

2. Mary can't decide whether she should go to the school library or stay at home to do her homework.

3. Please tell me how I can get to the bus station.

4. Jim told us where we could find that atlas.

5. He told me when I should come to the meeting.

6. The plumber told me how I could fix the leak in the sink.

7. Please tell me where I should meet you tomorrow morning.

8.Jim found two shirts he liked, but he had trouble deciding which one he should buy.

XI.Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1.We/ use/ planner/ keep track/ assignments/ and/ homework.

2.When/ we/ finish/ each assignment/ we/ have/ feeling/ accomplishment.

3.It/ good idea/ have/ quiet placed/ study.

4.We/ also/ start/ do/ homework/ earlier/ later/ in/ day.

5.It/ help/ consider/ join study clubs/ or/ take part/ activities after school.

TEST 2 (UNIT 3)

I.Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1.A.stressed B.tense C.concentrate D.self-aware

2.A.delighted B.helpline C.advice D.decision

3.A.classmate B.pressure C.embarrass D.missing

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

4.A.empathise B.embarrassed C.cognitive D.adulthood

5.A.disappointed B.adolescence C.environment D.independence

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. While many teachers spend some class time teaching _____ skills, students often need more social skills.

- A. study B. studied C. study's D. studies

7. By the age of 15, teenagers are better able to _____ a more demanding curriculum.

- A. solve B. operate C. handle D. deal

8. Tom told us that sometimes he had difficulty _____ his feelings.

- A. expressing B. communicating C. sending D. talking

9. My closest friend is not very _____ and she likes having a small friend group but I like talking with a lot of people and hanging out.

- A. society B. sociable C. social D. socialist

10. Ann was raised very _____ on her parents, and she was _____ that she wouldn't live on her own afterwards.

- A. dependent - worry B. dependent - worried C. independent - worry
D. independent - worried

11. The advice columnist said, "It sounds like the problem is not your appearance but the _____ you see yourself".

- A. route B. distance C. way D. behaviour

12. I suffer from depression and anxiety, but I don't know _____ to get over my problems.

- A. what B. C. where D. which

13. Miss Hoa said that unsuccessful test takers didn't know _____ the questions came from.

- A. when B. where C. what D. why

14. I want to talk to my teacher about my problems, but I have no idea _____ to start, or _____ to talk to him.

- A. what - where B. where - who C. why - whom D. where - how

15. Mr. Tan told us that the kids who _____ in tests often _____ the others were lucky.

- A. succeeded - thought B. succeeded - had thought
C. didn't succeed - were thinking D. didn't succeed - thought

IV. Rewrite the following in reported speech.

1. Tom said, "Homework is a leading cause of stress."

2. "A little stress can make students work harder, but too much stress can make the opposite result," Miss Hoa said.

3. "My parents can help me decide what's important and what's optional," said Phuc.

4. Mr. Thanh said, "Parents are right to be worried about stress and their children's health."

5. Nick's father said, "It doesn't matter where my son goes to college, Nick."

V. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

If parents bring up a child with the sole aim of turning the child into a genius, they will cause a disaster. According to several scientists, this is one of the biggest mistakes which ambitious parents make. Generally, the child will be only too aware of what his parents expect, and will fail. Unrealistic parental expectations can cause great damage to children.

However, if parents are not too unrealistic about what they expect their children to do, but are ambitious in a sensible way, the child may succeed in doing very well - especially if the parents are very supportive of their child.

Michael is very lucky. He is crazy about music, and his parents help him a lot by taking him to concerts and arranging private piano and violin lessons for him. They even drive him 50 kilometers twice a week for violin lessons. Michael's mother knows very little about music, but his father plays the trumpet in a large orchestra. However, he never makes Michael enter music competitions if he is unwilling.

Winston, Michael's friend, however, is not so lucky. Both his parents are successful musicians, and they set too high a standard for Winston. They want their son to be as successful as they are and so they enter him for every piano competition held. They are very unhappy when he does not win. Winston is always afraid that he will disappoint his parents and now he always seems quiet and unhappy.

1. One of the serious mistakes parents can make is to _____.

- A. push their child into trying too much B. help their child to become a genius
C. make their child become a musician D. neglect their child's education

2. Parents' ambition for their children is not wrong if they _____.

- A. force their children into achieving success B. themselves have been very successful
C. understand and help their children sensibly D. arrange private lessons for their children

3. Michael is fortunate in that _____.

- A. his father is a musician B. his parents are quite rich
C. his mother knows little about music D. his parents help him in a sensible way

4. Winston's parents push their son so much and he _____.

- A. has won a lot of piano competitions B. cannot learn much music from them
C. has become a good musician D. is afraid to disappoint them

5. The two examples given in the passage illustrate the principle that _____.

- A. successful parents always have intelligent children
B. successful parents often have unsuccessful children
C. parents should let the child develop in the way he wants
D. parents should spend more money on the child's education

VI. Read the passage, and do the tasks that follow.

Nick's voice is changing. It is one of the many developments that happen to both girls and boys when they reach puberty: a boy's voice gets deeper than a girl's.

At puberty, boys' bodies begin producing a lot of the hormone testosterone, which causes changes in several parts of the body, including the voice. For starters, a boy's larynx, also known as the voice box, grows bigger, which causes your voice to get deeper.

Along with all the other changes in your body, you might notice that your throat area looks a little different. For boys, when the larynx grows bigger, part of it sticks out in the part of the neck at the front of the throat and forms the Adam's apple. For girls, the larynx also grows bigger but not as much as a boy's. That is why girls don't have Adam's apples.

While your body is getting used to these changes, your voice can be difficult to control. A guy's voice "cracks" or "breaks" because his body is getting used to the changing size of his larynx. Fortunately, the cracking and breaking is only temporary. It usually lasts no longer than a few months.

Generally, a boy's voice will start to change somewhere between the ages of 11 and 15 - although it can be earlier or later for some.

Task 1. Read the text and identify whether the statements are true (T), or false (F).

- | | T | F |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A boy's voice deeper than a girl's because the boy reaches puberty. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. The larynx may be responsible for creating the sound of your voice | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. When boys reach puberty, they only change in their voice. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. Girls don't have Adam's apples because their larynx doesn't grow bigger. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. We can't see Adam's apples of girls. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6. When boys reach puberty, they can't control their voice. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7. In general, boys don't have the same age of puberty. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8. The changes of voice often last a few months. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Task 2. Finds words in the passage to match these definitions.

1. _____ : (of a sound) lower
2. _____ : any of the chemicals which affects the development of living things
3. _____ : lasting for a short time
4. _____ : a stage when a person develops from a child into an adult

VII. Rewrite the following sentences in reported speech.

1. Susan said, "Every day teased and bullied and I don't know what to do!"

2. "I'm having a really hard time getting along with my parents", Quan told me.

3. "Do I need a tutor when I get so in maths?" Mai asked her mother.

4. "I'm scared to talk to other students at school, and I've never told my parents about being depressed," Mi told Nick.

5. David asked the doctor, "Why do I often sleep in class although I try hard to break my bad habit?"

6. "Whenever I read a book, my mind starts to wander after a while, and I can't read anymore," said Phong.

7. "My mom sometimes complains about how untidy and lazy I am," Linda told Susan.

8. "My stepmother hates me and she often blames me for stealing things her friends gave her," Tim said.

VIII. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

Tips for a successful start in a middle school

1. If/ I/ you/ I/ try/ new things/ such as/ join/ new sports clubs/ your classmates.

2. You/ do/ homework carefully/ and/ keep/ assignments/ organized.

3. It/ good idea/ know/ when/ you/ tests/ and/ revise/ lessons.

4. You/ your teachers email addresses/ so that/ you/ ask/ missing assignments.

5. It/ help/ consider/ write down/ all assignments/ and/ test dates/ planner.

TEST 3 UNIT 3

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. a. treas <u>ure</u> | b. pleas <u>ure</u> | c. ens <u>ure</u> | d. meas <u>ure</u> |
| 2. a. da <u>ugh</u> ter | b. a <u>u</u> thor | c. la <u>und</u> ry | d. sa <u>us</u> age |
| 3. a. dial <u>s</u> | b. call <u>s</u> | c. say <u>s</u> | d. play <u>s</u> |
| 4. a. educa <u>t</u> ion | b. gradu <u>a</u> te | c. individ <u>u</u> al | d. confid <u>u</u> ent |
| 5. a. embarras <u>s</u> ed | b. awaren <u>e</u> ss | c. aband <u>o</u> ned | d. captai <u>n</u> |

II. Choose the word that has the main stress placed differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. a. frustrated | b. confident | c. delighted | d. embarrassed |
| 2. a. assure | b. pressure | c. figure | d. leisure |
| 3. a. concentration | b. favorable | c. adolescence | d. relaxation |
| 4. a. recognize | b. concentrate | c. assignment | d. cognitive |

5. a. teenager b. vehicle c. activate d. nationwide

III. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

- Did you forget your purse _____ purpose so you wouldn't have to pay?
a. on b. of c. in d. for
- He was sentenced to ten years in prison on charges of drug _____.
a. charging b. stealing c. trafficking d. trading
- In recent years, there has been thousands of victims of sexual and physical _____.
a. sentence b. crime c. abuse d. conduct
- Harrison's greatest attribute is his ability to work _____ pressure.
a. within b. under c. in d. on
- My parents always criticize me for not getting good grades at school. I wish they put themselves in my _____.
a. pants b. legs c. hands d. shoes
- He wondered _____ to tell the news to his parents.
a. why b. how c. what d. which
- He _____ a bachelor's degree in computer information systems in 1951.
a. forced b. sent c. took d. gained
- "You must come to my party," she told me.
a. She told me I come to her party. b. She told me to come her party.
c. She told me I had to come to her party. d. She told me I came to her party.
- "My life's got stuck these days. I am so depressed and unable to think of anything."
"_____"
a. You will be tired. b. Stay stuck there,
c. Stay calm. Everything will be alright. d. No, thanks.
- "Mom, I've got the first rank in class this semester!" "_____"
a. Well done! b. Thank you! c. Never mind! d. Let's go!

IV. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

- She asked him where he _____ (spend) his money so far.
- She _____ (ask) me the same question three times since yesterday.
- His doctor advised him _____ (not take) any strenuous exercise.
- He asked me what I _____ (want) to eat that night.
- I am driving John to the airport tomorrow. His own car _____ (repair).
- Would you mind _____ (take) the book back to the library for me?
- The new teaching methods encourage children _____ (think) for themselves.
- He _____ (work) as a research and development chemist for 10 years, then he retired.

V. Complete the sentences with correct tense of verbs.

- The interviewer asked me what I _____ (can) do if I were offered the job.
- Mandy asked me if the boys _____ (read) the book at present.
- The manager told me that I _____ (travel) from place to place the following month.
- They said they _____ (never/ be) to Scotland until last year.
- Jason and Victoria told me they _____ (do) their best in the exams the following day.
- I wondered why Nick _____ (not go) to New York the summer before.
- John told me that there _____ (may) not be dessert after dinner.
- She asked me if everyone _____ (must) contact the Magic Number in emergency situations.
- My mom said she _____ (be) going to visit a friend of hers in London.
- Shannon said that she _____ (need) to take care of her baby.

VI. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

- Nowadays young people want to leave home as soon as they reach _____. (adult)
- A good night's sleep will improve your _____. (concentrate)
- Teens should learn to be _____ when making a presentation. (confidence)
- Going away to college has made me much more _____. (depend)

5. A lot of people eat too much when they're _____. (depress)
6. I have a bad habit of taking on more _____ than I can handle. (responsible)
7. Students have spoken of their growing _____ with school administrators. (frustrate)
8. Ann suffered from depression and a number of other _____ problems. (emotion)
9. Have you thought of talking to a marriage guidance _____? (counsel)
10. Her networking and _____ skills came in handy for a charity boxing event she hosted. (organize)

VII. Read the text then choose the correct answers.

Practical stress management can help students deal with their worries and become more productive, competent and efficient. First of all, students must be able to design and stick to a timetable. Choose a relaxing break between work and study, even if it's just taking out time to breathe. In addition, a healthy lifestyle is essential for students. Let's drink more water as well as take out time to get some air and exercise. Furthermore, organization is very important in academic life for dealing with stress. By keeping academic notes organized, turning in assignments on time, and keeping track of all deadlines, stress can be reduced to a great extent. Stress can also get worse if a person feels lonely. Therefore, by letting out all your thoughts to someone you trust, you immediately feel a lot better. However, if you feel extremely stressed out, take a break and do something you love. Whether it is painting or listening to music, doing something you enjoy can cheer up your mood and distract you from a stressor. It's about time that we students accept that we can achieve just as much in life without all the stress.

1. Practical stress management can help students _____.
 - a. deal with stress
 - b. have more time
 - c. face up to the worst situation
 - d. think critically
2. What should students pay attention to when designing a timetable?
 - a. They have to arrange time to breathe.
 - b. They need to set time for relaxation.
 - c. They don't need to take notice of certain tasks.
 - d. They should stop working and studying.
3. What can students do to lead a healthy lifestyle?
 - a. Visit their doctor as scheduled.
 - b. Not to put much pressure on time management.
 - c. Follow the timetable strictly.
 - d. Go outside for fresh air, do regular exercises and drink more water.
4. Why is organization important in academic life?
 - a. Because it can help students get good grades.
 - b. Because it is a must for all students.
 - c. Because it can help students reduce stress.
 - d. Because it leads to better results.
5. Which of the following sentences is true?
 - a. You should stay alone when being under pressure.
 - b. When you feel lonely, you should grab someone to talk.
 - c. The more lonely you are, the more stress you can have.
 - d. It is believed that stress can control itself.
6. What should you do when you are feeling stressed?
 - a. Take time for reflection on your progress.
 - b. Ease your soul and your mind.
 - c. Stay away from other people.
 - d. Take a break and do what you enjoy.

VIII. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word in capital.

1. He said he wouldn't have enough time to finish the job. (WILL)

2. When did your friends eat that chocolate cake? (WAS)

3. "What are the skills you concern most?" my teacher asked. (I)

4. I have never read such as interesting novel as *The Little Prince*. (MOST)

5. Finish your homework or you can't go out with your friend. (IF)

6. They're not sure how they should operate the new system. (TO)

7. It took me 4 hours to read the first chapter of the book. (SPENT)

8. Snowboarding is more dangerous than tennis. (AS)

IX. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. "Where did you meet him?" Jimmy asked.
→ Jimmy asked _____
2. "When should I register for the new course on Chinese?" Jim asked his teacher.
→ Jim asked his teacher _____
3. Joana couldn't decide when she should start her journey.
→ Joana couldn't decide _____
4. "You must stay in bed until next Monday!" the doctor said.
→ The doctor said _____
5. I have no idea who I should call for help in this situation.
→ I have no idea _____
6. "Should I tell her the truth about her misery?" she asked herself.
→ She wondered _____
7. I'm not sure what I should do to help her overcome her mom's death.
→ I'm not sure _____
8. "I am going to work for a new company next week," John said.
→ John said _____

X. Turn the following sentences into reported speech.

1. "Our daughter wants to study abroad for a year," they said.

2. "Have you ever experienced school pressures?" she asked me.

3. "Yesterday I couldn't watch my favourite cartoon on Disney Channel," he said.

4. "Is the weather good in Shanghai in the summer?" Jane asked me.

5. "What are the skills that you find the most difficult to learn?" she asked me.

6. "Would you bring me a cup of coffee, please?" she told me.

7. "I'll come and help you on Saturday," Joana told me.

8. "When will you come back home?" my mom asked me.

9. "Do you need any help on this assignment?" the teacher asked me.

10. "My friend got engaged to a German last month," Danny told Ann.

TEST YOURSELF 1(UNIT 1,2,3)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. craft B. carve C. aware D. cast
2. A. surface B. drumhead C. multicultural D. frustrated
3. A. craftsman B. house-keeping C. cost D. preserve

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

4. A. fabulous B. skyscraper C. lacquerware D. determine
5. A. authenticity B. cooperative C. metropolitan D. multicultural

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. Lacquering is a uniquely-performed _____ in Viet Nam.
A. tradition B. production C. culture D. craft
7. The drawing and printing techniques have been _____ and inherited over many generations.
A. preserved B. stored C. prevented D. treated
8. There is a _____ of employment opportunities in a city.
A. type B. variety C. group D. change
9. Skillful hand-weaving techniques of the local _____ make Dinh An sedge mats a wonderful souvenir for visitors.
A. artists B. actors C. artefacts D. artisans
10. Maybe we are worried about something so our _____ keeps wandering over to a particular issue.
A. brain B. _____ C. feeling D. mind
11. The bamboo used to make conical hats must be split into very thin strings and _____ then put into water _____ they can avoid tearing and any breakage.
A. because B. _____ C. so that D. therefore
12. To consider an idea or a suggestion before deciding to accept it is to _____.
A. look it up B. _____ C. think it over D. take it up
13. "Do you _____ your new classmate, or do you two argue?"
A. get on with B. _____ C. face up to D. keep up with
14. All of my teachers, friends and relatives are asking me continually what careers I am interested in and I'm struggling to _____ a decision.
A. do B. _____ C. take D. offer
15. I am unsure as to _____ fashion designing is the right career for me.
A. whether B. what C. where D. how

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

<i>luxury</i>	<i>cleanest</i>	<i>cultures</i>	<i>busiest</i>
<i>skyscrapers</i>	<i>perfect</i>	<i>neighbourhoods</i>	<i>liveable</i>

Singapore is the most (16) _____ city in Southeast Asia, but it is a rather expensive place to live. Public transportation goes to everywhere, and getting a permit to drive a car costs you a lot of money. Therefore, it is one of the (17) _____ cities in the world, too. Besides the (18) _____ in Clark Quay, Singapore is a melting pot of Western, Indian, Chinese, and Malay (19) _____. The diverse culture of Singapore makes it a (20) _____ place for fine shopping and dining. You can lie on Singapore's own beaches on Sentosa Island or go to great beaches in Indonesia not far away.

V. Write each sentence so that it has a similar meaning and contains the word in brackets. Make sure that you use the correct verb form.

21. Paul arrived when everyone had gone home. (up)
Paul _____.
22. We should not make an important decision until we have thought carefully about it. (think)
We should _____ an important decision.
23. She always has a good relationship with the children. (on)
She always _____.

24. I don't believe a word he said; he just invented the story. (**up**)

I don't believe a word he said: he just _____.

25. Would you mind taking care of my bicycle while I'm away for a while? (**after**)

Would you mind _____ while I'm away for a while?

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

We know that nowadays students (26)_____ from test stress, and there are a few of the biggest causes. First, it is important to do your best and study hard, but you may push yourself too much to get a high grade, and (27)_____ can be hard to deal with. Second, many schools want to show high test grades from their students to (28)_____ that they are doing a good job of educating them. Therefore, they have high expectations for the teachers, who (29)_____ have high expectations for the students. In addition, most parents want to see great school (30)_____, and they can start pushing their children when test time (31)_____. Moreover, if you had a (32)_____ time with a test in the past, or if you have (33)_____ poorly on one or more tests, you could feel anxious about the next one. Finally, sometimes other students can (34)_____ rumors about a test, or you might hear things from older friends and siblings. Rumors like "That teacher's tests are totally impossible to pass!" can make you a lot (35)_____ nervous.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 26. A. suffer | B. prevent | C. experience | D. show |
| 27. A. force | B. causes | C. grades | D. pressure |
| 28. A. make | B. prove | C. discover | D. try |
| 29. A. after | B. again | C. then | D. than |
| 30. A. events | B. reports | C. descriptions | D. statements |
| 31. A. comes around | B. comes through | C. comes to | D. comes under |
| 32. A. bad | B. low | C. pleasant | D. harmful |
| 33. A. come | B. taken | C. made | D. done |
| 34. A. expand | B. spread | C. reach | D. extend |
| 35. A. much | B. over | C. more | D. less |

VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

To preserve and develop traditional craft villages, in recent years, the local authorities have conducted preservation of four traditional crafts: brocade weaving, silver carving, blacksmithing, and carpentry to bring about economic and social efficiency for the development of provincial tourism...

Currently, the province of Lao Cai has formed the clear models of traditional villages. Cat Cat village has gradually built its brand with the forging and casting products, textiles of linens of Hmong people. The famous alcohol villages have found their footholds in the market such as Pho village corn wine (Bac Ha), Xeo village wine (in Bat Xat commune)

The villages in the province have been associated with tourism spots and promote tourism development in the community, improve living standards of many families through their home business, selling handicrafts, brocade products.

In the past, in the villages in Sa Pa, people mostly make their living in agriculture, forestry, but now there have been many households getting involved in tourism activities of the village.

With the aim of preserving and developing traditional village linked to tourism development, most of the villages have created its own **definition** for tourists to learn and explore. In particular, brocade weaving is dominant, serving the needs of families and tourists. Only in Sa Pa district has 11 embroidery and weaving villages, in Ta Phin village, and San Sa Ho village with about 1000 households participating and a number of groups from the district women society, put on the market each year more than 30,000 metres of fabric. Other districts like Van Ban, Bac Ha have also formed several embroidery villages, attracting thousands of workers.

36. Cat Cat village is famous for _____.

- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| A. corn wine | B. its textiles of linens | C. blacksmithing | D. silver carving |
|--------------|---------------------------|------------------|-------------------|

37. The purpose of preservation of traditional craft villages is bringing about _____.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| A. the clear models of traditional villages | B. weaving 30,000 metres of fabric |
|---|------------------------------------|

C.the start of tourism D.economic and social development

38.We can infer from the passage thattourism has _____.

- A.raised labour income in rural areas B.made all farmers quit farming
C.prevented forests from being cut down D.found its footholds in the market

39. All of the following are true EXCEPT that_____.

- A.brocade weaving has become the most important craft in Sa Pa and nearby districts
B.local people can sell brocade handicrafts, products to tourists
C.other districts should start preserving their crafts like Sa Pa
D.preservation of traditional crafts can be associated with tourism

40. The word "**definition**" in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to _____.

- A.descriptions of features B.explanation of the meaning
C.quality of being clear D.what tourism means

VIII. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

41. First/ visitors/ visit/ Institute/Oceanography/ which/ one/ first centers/ scientific research/ Indochina.

42. They/ go on/ see/ Marine Creature Museum/ more than/ 80,000 sea and fresh water specimen/ and/ living creatures/ glass tanks.

43. Next/ they/ go/ Long Son Pagoda/ which/ largest pagoda/ Nha Trang.

44. Then/ visitors/ not miss Ponagar Cham Tower/ built/ between/ 7th/ 12th century/ honour/ Mother/ Cham Kingdom.

45. Finally/ Chong Rocks/ famous sight/ Nha Trang/ large rock clusters/ beach/ at/ foot/ La San hill.

TEST YOURSELF 2(UNIT 1,2,3)

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. a. concentration | b. question | c. attraction | d. emotion |
| 2. a. exist | b. exchange | c. extreme | d. expect |
| 3. a. recognize | b. opinion | c. adolescence | d. conflict |
| 4. a. urban | b. craft | c. organize | d. Canada |
| 5. a. artisan | b. handicraft | c. machine | d. heritage |

II. Choose the word that has the main stress placed differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. encourage | b. volunteer | c. overcome | d. understand |
| 2. a. informed | b. worried | c. relaxed | d. depressed |
| 3. a. recognition | b. affordable | c. independent | d. adolescence |
| 4. a. artisan | b. frustration | c. emotion | d. forbidden |
| 5. a. recreational | b. university | c. individual | d. communicator |

III. Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

lacquerware	abandoned	metropolitan	emergency	self-discipline
sprawl	multicultural	embarrassed	adolescence	lanterns

1. The charity's work involves finding foster homes for _____ children.
2. We try to teach the children self-reliance and _____.
3. During _____, boys are sometimes very shy and lacking of self-confidence.
4. The chair broke when Tim sat on it – he was pretty _____.
5. The _____ services in this area simply couldn't cope if there were a major accident or terrorist attack.
6. Urban _____ is caused in part by the need to accommodate a rising urban population.
7. Singapore's mix of cultures – mostly Chinese, Indian, and Malay – makes it a _____ society.

8. Vietnamese believe that hanging a couple of _____ in front of their houses will bring the warmth and happiness to the family.
9. Duck eggshell is especially applied in Vietnamese _____.
10. San Francisco tops the list of the 25 largest _____ areas by household income.

IV. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

1. Studies show that having good conflict _____ skills is associated with various positive outcomes.
a. resolutorial b. resolving c. resolve d. resolution
2. For most of us, however, positive thinking and _____ can be learned.
a. self-awareness b. self-abuse c. self-access d. self-analysis
3. He asked her to marry him but she _____.
a. carry him out b. turned him down c. took him out d. let him in
4. The cost _____ living in Singapore is higher than any countries in South East Asia.
a. for b. on c. of d. in
5. I met James in a restaurant on Friday and he said that he had seen Caroline there _____.
a. the day before b. this day c. today d. that day
16. Jane said that she _____ come and look after the children the following day.
a. can b. will c. could d. should
7. The weather was _____ in England than in Spain last week.
a. most warmer b. by far warmer c. more warmer d. much warmer
8. _____ all our efforts to save the school, the authorities decided to close it.
a. Since b. Despite c. Although d. Because
9. He still doesn't know _____ his budget when living alone in the city.
a. when to manage b. how to manage c. where to manage d. what to manage
10. A: "I really don't like shopping around the holidays."
B: "_____. It's always so busy."
a. I couldn't agree with you more. b. I like it.
c. I don't like it. d. No, it's not that.

V. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Many people enjoy the pleasures and _____ of living in a city center. (convenient)
2. Cigarette smoking is _____ for about 90% of deaths from lung cancer, (respond)
3. He went on to work in film _____ and shared a flat with his father. (produce)
4. John changed from a friendly and cheerful young boy into a confused _____. (adolescence)
5. The weather was _____, so we arrived earlier than expected. (favor)
6. Schools must try to make science more _____ to youngsters. (attract)
7. She managed to find a job immediately after _____. (graduate)
8. Parents need to continue to _____ with the child. (empathy)
9. During the 19th century, Britain became the world's first modern _____ society. (urban)
10. She got into _____ difficulties after her parents had passed away. (finance)

VI. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. He told them again that they _____ (must) learn to love each other.
2. When I woke up this morning, it was raining and my father _____ (sing) in the kitchen.
3. I wondered where _____ (get) my pre-paid train ticket.
4. _____ (you/ travel) to Paris tomorrow?
5. Dana admitted _____ (feel) hurt by what I had said.
6. She said she _____ (write) three books and she was working on another one.
7. She was made _____ (work) on Saturday, even though she hated working at weekends.
8. If I _____ (find) her address, I would send her an invitation.
9. Japanese _____ (become) one of the most popular courses at the university since the Asian studies program was established.
10. Look at those black clouds. I think it _____ (rain).

VII.

Match sentences.

A

1. What is the function of the Magic Number?
2. I wonder whether to encourage him to follow his dream.
3. Was she delighted to take a course on medicine as her parents wished?
4. Artisans have to follow 15 stages to make a conical hat, don't they?
5. Shall we try making a lantern when visiting Hoi An?
6. Sherry, getting over the jet lag?
7. Why did you turn down his invitation to the party?
8. How can we reduce the pollution in urban

B

- a. That's cool.
- b. We can use public transportation instead of cars or motorbikes.
- c. I had an appointment with my doctor. I suffered from stomachache those days.
- d. I think you should do it.
- e. No, she wasn't.
- f. It is a service for counseling and protecting children and young adults in Vietnam.
- g. Yes, I slept like a log right after arriving home.
- h. Yes, they do.

VIII. Choose the correct answers to complete the passage.

Living in a city has a (1)_____ of drawbacks. Firstly, there is the problem of traffic (2)_____ and traffic accidents. The increase (3)_____ population and the increasing number of vehicles have (4)_____ many accidents to happen every day. Secondly, air pollution (5)_____ affects people's health, and is also has a bad (6)_____ on the environment. More and more city dwellers suffer from coughing or breathing problems. Thirdly, the city is noisy, even at night. (7)_____ pollution comes from the traffic and from construction sites. Buildings are always being knocked down and rebuilt. These factors contribute to making city life (8)_____ difficult for its residents.

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. a. amount | b. large | c. number | d. quantity |
| 2. a. calm | b. jams | c. light | d. legacy |
| 3. a. with | b. on | c. for | d. in |
| 4. a. caused | b. made | c. done | d. got |
| 5. a. actively | b. negatively | c. positively | d. weakly |
| 6. a. pressure | b. consequence | c. influence | d. result |
| 7. a. Noise | b. Air | c. Water | d. Soil |
| 8. a. mostly | b. very | c. much | d. more |

IX. Read the text carefully then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F) and choose the correct answers.

Spending your free time on the Internet can be fun. You can chat, share photos with friends, and play online games. But some people are addicted to the Internet. They just can't turn it off.

Being online for many hours at a time does not mean you have a problem. The Internet is very useful. Online, you can pay your bills, buy clothes, and read the news. There are many good reasons to spend time online. However, people with an Internet addiction are online too much. They don't spend time with their friends and family. Instead, they spend their time chatting with their Internet friends, people they have never met in real life. Some also play online games all day or night. Some people with Internet addictions even leave their jobs so they can spend even more time online! People with Internet addictions don't just go online to shop, have fun, or do work. People who have this problem often go online because they want to escape the stress and problems in their lives. Many internet addicts stop caring about their real lives, and focus only on their online lives.

One way Internet addicts can get help is by using special software. This software controls how much time someone can spend online. It tells the computer to turn off the internet after a certain amount time. This helps people focus on real life. The software's goal is to teach people to use the Internet for good reasons

and not just as an escape.

1. People with Internet addiction spend most of their free time on the Internet.
2. Paying bills online is a useful way to use the Internet.
3. Internet addiction causes problems in one's daily life.
4. Most Internet addicts play online games all day or night.
5. Using special software is a way of helping people stop their Internet addiction.
6. What is the main idea of the article?
 - a. People should not spend time on the Internet.
 - b. The Internet is very good for people.
 - c. Spending too much time online is not good.
 - d. Families should use the Internet together.
7. Which is NOT a problem for people with Internet addiction?
 - a. They stop spending time with their family.
 - b. They learn to type very fast.
 - c. They might lose their jobs.
 - d. They stop caring about their real lives.
8. According to the passage, a person is most likely to become an Internet addict if _____.
 - a. their life is stressful and has problems
 - b. their job is boring
 - c. they enjoy online gaming
 - d. they have a lot of online friends

X. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. The wounded persons were taken to hospital by the police.
→ The police _____
2. "Don't leave your luggage unattended."
→ He asked me _____
3. The salary of a professor is higher than that of a secretary.
→ The salary of a secretary is _____
4. He felt very miserable, so he looked for someone to share his life with.
→ He looked _____
5. I didn't realize how late it was and I didn't stop studying till after midnight.
→ I didn't realize how late it was and I went _____
6. When did you start working on the project?
→ How long _____
7. I am leaving now so that I won't be late for work.
→ I am leaving now in _____
8. New York City is the busier than any other city in the world.
→ New York City _____
9. Dina is like her mother's side of the family.
→ Dina takes _____
10. "How long have you been standing here?" he asked me.
→ He asked me _____

UNIT 4: LIFE IN THE PAST

A. VOCABULARY

- | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. act out (v) | /ækt aʊt/: | đóng vai, diễn |
| 2. arctic (adj) | /'ɑ:ktɪk/: | (thuộc về) Bắc cực |
| 3. bare-footed (adj) | /beə(r)-fʊtɪd/: | chân đất |
| 4. behave (v) (+oneself) | /bi'hæv/: | ngoan, biết cư xử |
| 5. dogsled (n) | /'dɒɡslɛd/: | xe chó kéo |
| 6. domed (adj) | /dəʊmd/: | hình vòm |
| 7. downtown (adv) | /'daʊn'taʊn/: | vào trung tâm thành phố |
| 8. eat out (v) | /i:t aʊt/: | ăn ngoài |
| 9. entertain (v) | /'entə'teɪn/: | giải trí |

10. event (n)	/ɪˈvent/:	sự kiện
11. face to face (adv)	/feɪs tə feɪs/:	trực diện, mặt đối mặt
12. facility (n)	/fəˈsɪləti/:	phương tiện, thiết bị
13. igloo (n)	/ˈɪɡluː/:	lều tuyết
14. illiterate (adj)	/ɪˈlɪtərət/:	thất học
15. loudspeaker (n)	/ˌlaʊdˈspiːkə(r)/:	loa
16. occasion (n)	/əˈkeɪʒn/:	dịp
17. pass on (ph.v)	/pɑːs ɒn/:	truyền lại, kể lại
18. post (v)	/pəʊst/:	đăng tải
19. snack (n)	/snæk/:	đồ ăn vặt
20. street vendor (n)	/stri:t ˈvendə(r)/:	người bán hàng rong
21. strict (adj)	/strikt/:	ng nghiêm khắc
22. treat (v)	/tri:t/:	cư xử

B. GRAMMAR

I. ÔN TẬP THÓI QUEN TRONG QUÁ KHỨ VỚI “USED TO”

Cách sử dụng	“Used to” được dùng để miêu tả những thói quen, hành động hoặc trạng thái đã xảy ra thường xuyên trong quá khứ và đã kết thúc, không còn ở hiện tại.
Cấu trúc	(+) S + used to + V... (-) S + didn't used to + V... (?) Did + S + use to + V...
Ví dụ	- I used to listen to the radio. (Ngày trước tôi thường nghe đài.) - They used to go swimming together. (Ngày trước họ thường đi bơi cùng nhau.) - He didn't use to play marbles. (Ngày trước anh ấy không chơi bi.) - Did you used to ride a buffalo? (Ngày trước bạn có đi cưỡi trâu không?)



BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Hoàn thành các câu sau với cấu trúc “used to” và động từ trong ngoặc.

- Do you know what (Jim/do) _____ before he retired?
- _____ (Mary/be) a successful business woman before she went bankrupt?
- My family (not/travel) _____ during summer vacation but now we really enjoy it.
- I wonder what (people/do) _____ to celebrate the Harvest Festival in the past?
- As a kid, Josh (have) _____ his grandfather pick him up from primary school.
- This boy band (be) _____ popular before they disbanded.
- When my grandmother was young, she (set off) _____ for a foreign country almost every summer.
- My mother says that she (not cope) _____ with much work stress five years ago.
- In the past, people in my village (raise) _____ poultry or cattle to earn a living.
- I can't believe my father (be) considered a bad boy before he married my mother.
- Who _____ (you/confide) in when you was at your teenage?
- They (not use) _____ fork and knife when they first moved to America.
- Jim (not like) _____ me much when we were at school but now he is my husband.
- My father (work) _____ very far from home before he found his current job.
- Those men (suffer) _____ a lot before they finally succeeded in their business.

Bài 2: Dựa vào những thông tin cho sẵn để viết các câu miêu tả những sự việc trong quá khứ mà bây giờ không còn làm nữa.

0. I saw many buffaloes in my hometown but I can't see many of them now.

-> I used to see many buffaloes in my hometown.

1. This was only a small company with several years of low profit but now it has changed a lot.

-> _____

2. Men were the breadwinner of the family and women depended greatly on men.

-> _____

3. My sister admitted that she lied sometimes in the past but now she didn't.

-> _____

4. Jim asked me what I preferred to do as a child that I no longer did now.

-> _____

5. Who took care of you when you were a toddler?

-> _____

6. Jim wasn't interested in reading books when he was small but now he's really into it.

-> _____

7. I got all the attention from my parents before my little brother was born.

-> _____

8. Bungalows were very popular 6 years ago.

-> _____

Bài 3: Hoàn thành các câu sau với cấu trúc "used to" và các động từ cho sẵn.

Look	Eat	Own	Earn
Work	Be	Play	Live

1. My whole family _____ on my father's salary but now both of my parents work to support our family.

2. My brother _____ after me when my parents were at work.

3. In the past, women _____ expected to stay home, do household chores and farming instead of getting higher education.

4. Those farmers _____ hard but _____ little money before they were instructed to apply technologies in their farming.

5. We (not) _____ out when but now we often do because we are sometime too busy to prepare a meal.

6. Women (not) _____ an important role in the political field in the past 50 years.

7. My uncle _____ a sheep farm before he sold it to move to the city.

II. CÂU ĐIỀU ƯỚC CHO HIỆN TẠI (WISHES FOR THE PRESENT)

	Trường hợp 1	Trường hợp 2
Cách Dùng	Diễn tả một sự không hài lòng, không thỏa mãn với một hoàn cảnh ở hiện tại, và ao ước hoàn cảnh đó xảy ra theo chiều hướng khác đi ở hiện tại và tương lai	Diễn tả điều ước cho một sự việc ta mong muốn nó xảy ra ngay tại thời điểm nói.

Cấu trúc	I wish + S + V-ed (Quá khứ đơn) Hoặc I wish + could + V	I wish + S + was/were + V-ing (quá khứ tiếp diễn)
Ví dụ	- I wish I knew more about European history. (=but I don't know much about European history.) - I wish I could drive really fast. (= but I can't drive fast.) (Dùng "wish + could + V" để nói về việc người nói ao ước có khả năng làm gì nhưng thực tế họ không có khả năng thực hiện.)	- My son wishes he were studying Marketing instead of Hospitality.
Chú ý	Có thể sử dụng were đối với tất cả các ngôi trong mệnh đề wish .	



BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 4: Chia động từ trong ngoặc sao cho thích hợp

- Jane wish she (can/go) _____ travelling at least once a year.
- Jim wishes he (earn) _____ more money so that he would live more comfortable.
- My mother wishes she (not have) _____ to work for extra hours.
- The little boy wishes it (not rain) _____ at the moment.
- I wish I (be) _____ healthier so that I could play some extreme sports.
- Tim is sad because he has lost his bike. He wishes his mother (buy) _____ him a new one.
- I wish someone (offer) _____ me an opportunity to study abroad.
- Jim is bored as he is doing his homework now. He wish he (do) _____ his homework.
- My father is an officer but he wishes he (be) _____ a famous singer.
- My mother never let me go to school on my own. I wish she (let) _____ me go alone.

Bài 5: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

- Old/ man/ wish/ his/ grandchild/ visit/ him/ more/ often.

- I/ wish/ you/ can/ spend/ more/ time/ on/ study.

- They/ wish/ their/ team/ be/champion.

- I/ wish/ I/ have/ more/ friend/ and/ I/ not/ be/ lonely.

- Mary/ wish/ her/ parents/ not/ have/ go/ on/ business/ trips/ so/ often.

- Many/ people/ wish/ they/ be/ wealthy/ but/ I/ do/ not.

- I/ wish/ my/ mother/ be/ less/ busy/ so that/ she/ have/ more/ time/ for/ me.

- Jim/ wish/ his/ parents/ not/ expect/ too/ much/ from/ him.

Bài 6: Dựa vào câu cho trước, viết câu thể hiện điều ước với "wish"

- I don't have a computer now.
-> I wish I had a computer now.
- Jim's friend lives very far from him.
-> Jim wishes _____

2. My friend cannot afford her favorite camera.
-> My friend wishes _____
3. The teacher make us do a lot of homework.
-> We _____
4. I can't sing as beautifully as my sister.
-> I _____
5. My father is depressed that his favorite football team loses the ticket to the final.
-> My father _____
6. I don't have my own house at the present.
-> I _____
7. Mr. Brown is sad that there is no way he can get promotion this year.
-> Mr. Brown _____
8. Peter is annoyed because there is too much noise from his neighbor.
-> Peter _____

Bài 7: Đánh dấu [V] trước câu đúng, đánh dấu [X] trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng.

- _____ 1. Peter and Jane wishes they could see each other more often.

- _____ 2. I wish Jim were able to deal with all the problems on his own.

- _____ 3. Mrs. Brown wishes her husband were home more often and talks to her more.

- _____ 4. They wish their work was less stressful and they have more time to relax.

- _____ 5. James wishes he had more money so that he could buy what he wants.

- _____ 6. I wish I wasn't having to travel a long distance to work every day.

- _____ 7. They wish they will able to visit her foreign friend.

- _____ 8. I only wish they provided a larger playground for the kids.

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 8: Sắp xếp những từ đã cho thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. you/ make/ Did/ any/ mistake/ use/ terrible/ to?

2. she/ run/ Mary/ could/ a/ into/ figure/ wishes/ famous.

3. I/ that/ used/ she/ believe/ doesn't/ to/ a/ be/ lawyer.

4. I/ would/ never/ wish/ wealthy/ a/ person/ I/ be.

5. wish/ a/ My/ list/ sister/ and/ it/ to/ send/ Santa Claus/ used/ make/ to.

6. you/ what/ Do/ Jim/ company/ to/ for/ used/ work/ know?

7. English/ my/ that/ teacher/ simple/ wish/ used/ language/ us/ understand/ to/ for/ I.

8. they/ They/ could/ wish/ their/ by/ speaking/ with/ talking/ foreigners/ improve/ skill.

Bài 9: Viết lại câu với những từ cho sẵn.

- When I was a child, I liked watching cartoons but now I no longer like them.
-> When I was a child, I used _____
- My brother is very lazy. I can't stand him anymore.
-> I wish my _____
- I want to be a university students but I can't.
-> I wish _____
- When Jim was six, he dreamt of becoming a superhero but now he gives up on that dream.
-> When Jim was six, he used _____
- Mr. Brown never allows her daughter to go to the party although she always want to.
-> Mr. Brown's daughter wishes _____
- My friend always regrets that he doesn't live in the same neighborhood as me.
-> My friend wishes _____
- "What did you use to do in your free time as a child?" Mary asked me.
-> Mary asked me what _____
- I am frustrated because I am cleaning the mess Jim has made.
-> I wish I _____

BÀI 10: Hoàn thành các câu sau với dạng đúng của động từ cho sẵn.

Dye	Be	Be	Given	Ride
Have	Purchase	Play	Become	fly

- We used to _____ things from street vendors when we were small.
- In the past, Vietnamese women used to _____ their teeth black.
- I wish there _____ so many natural disasters so that people would not suffer from their consequences.
- No one in my class used to _____ a buffalo like I did.
- They didn't use to _____ kites when they lived in the countryside.
- Extended families used to _____ very popular in Vietnam years ago.
- Jane wishes someone _____ her a chance to do it over again.
- I wish I could _____ a well - known artist.
- Did your mother use to _____ the role of both mother and father when your father was away from home?
- Tom wishes he (not) _____ to learn at the moment.

Bài 11: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

I have always wondered how life was twenty years ago. I (1) _____ that life in the past was boring and inconvenient (2) _____ the lack of modern facilities. However I changed my opinion after I heard my grandfather talk about his childhood. In the past, although modern and convenient gadgets were not available, everyone really enjoyed the simple and peaceful life. In the family, the father used to be the (3) _____ while the mother used to just stay home and take care of the house. The saying "Men make house, women make home" used to be very popular that day. The children (4) _____ play video games or go on extra classes after school as we (5) _____ today. (6) _____, they could enjoy a variety of outdoor activities with other such as kite flying, rope skipping, so on. In the past, many unique customs of Vietnamese people were seen more vividly than today. (7) _____, Vietnamese women used to (8) _____ their teeth black and people used to chew betel nut. It is such a pity that I rarely see those customs today.

- A. consumed

B. presumed

C. resumed

D. résumé
- A. because

B. despite

C. due to

D. as
- A. breadwinner

B. pillar

C. strongest

D. most important

- | | | | | |
|----|-------------------|------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| 4. | A. didn't used to | B. didn't use to | C. used to | D. use to |
| 5. | A. do | B. did | C. used to do | D. didn't used to do |
| 6. | A. Besides | B. While | C. However | D. Instead |
| 7. | A. Likewise | B. For example | C. Therefore | D. Although |
| 8. | A. color | B. dye | C. make | D. paint |

Bài 12: Đọc đoạn văn sau, điền T (True) trước câu có chứa thông tin đúng với nội dung bài đọc. Điền F (False) trước câu có chứa thông tin không đúng với nội dung bài đọc. Điền NG (Not Given) trước câu có nội dung không đúng với nội dung bài đọc.

Vietnam's educational system in the past

Have you ever wondered how teachers, students and classrooms look like years ago? In the past, Vietnam educational system was under the influence of by many foreign culture, of which the Chinese had most significant effects.

The earliest students in Vietnam received most of their education from the Buddhist clergy. Under the 1000-year invasion and domination of the Chinese, Vietnam's education was greatly affected by China's educational system. This influence is depicted in the early examinations held to recruit high mandarin officials. The first examination of this type was held in 1075. During the latter part of the 11th century, a National College was established for the education of sons or royalty and other high-ranking officials, which marked the beginning of Confucian education in Vietnam. In 1252, the college was opened to students from various backgrounds besides royal or official ones.

At the beginning of the 15th century, many Confucian-type schools were in operation in leading centers. Those days, education became the most cherished ideals. Only those who passed the qualification examination for Mandarins had any hope of achieving state-owned jobs or other honors. The scholar was looked up to and highly revered.

- _____ 1. Vietnam's educational system was only affected by Chinese.
- _____ 2. The earliest students in Vietnam received their education from the Chinese Buddhist clergy.
- _____ 3. The early examinations were held to recruit high mandarin officials.
- _____ 4. During the latter part of the 11th century, the National College was opened to every students.
- _____ 5. At the beginning of the 15th century, many Confucian-type schools were in operation only in leading centers.
- _____ 6. Those days, education was highly appreciated.
- _____ 7. The scholar was highly respected to and idolized.

C.EXERCISES

TEST 1 (UNIT 4)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. <u>artic</u> | B. <u>occasion</u> | C. <u>face</u> | D. <u>behave</u> |
| 2. A. <u>event</u> | B. <u>vendor</u> | C. <u>collect</u> | D. <u>gap</u> |
| 3. A. <u>dogsled</u> | B. <u>post</u> | C. <u>preserve</u> | D. <u>strict</u> |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 4. A. <u>dogsled</u> | B. <u>downtown</u> | C. <u>igloo</u> | D. <u>fatal</u> |
| 5. A. <u>illiterate</u> | B. <u>entertainment</u> | C. <u>ability</u> | D. <u>especially</u> |

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. They like playing tug-of-war and cat and mouse game _____ because playing these games with the friends is _____.
- A. almost - funny B. almost - fun C. most - fun D. most - funny
7. Traditional games _____ an important role in children's intellectual life.
- A. play B. take C. bring D. make
8. Whenever _____ Vietnamese village festivals, you will have a chance to watch a traditional game - human chess - which is the favourite to a great deal of Vietnamese people.
- A. participating B. taking place C. taking part D. taking part in

9. Traditional games _____ as an effective but simple educational method for centuries.
 A. were used B. used to use C. had used D. have been used
10. Raising roosters for cockfighting _____ heavy investments in time and labour.
 A. requests B. requires C. satisfies D. asks
11. The folk _____ of top spinning still attracts city children despite the popularity of modern games such as bowling, skateboarding, billiards and video games.
 A. pastime B. ceremony C. activity D. enjoyment
12. Although spinning tops are among the simplest of toys, children _____ it one of the most vivid and exciting games.
 A. allow B. let C. make D. keep
13. Women have walked dozens of kilometres to market _____ twenty- or thirty-kilogram loads in shoulder poles for generations.
 A. carry B. to carry C. to be carried D. carrying
14. Cyclo, a sort of tricycle rickshaw, _____ the most popular means of transport in Viet Nam in the past.
 A. was B. used to C. used to be D. would be
15. We wish LCD projectors _____ still expensive.
 A. haven't been B. are not C. were not D. hadn't been

IV. Fill in each blank in the sentences with the correct verb from the box.

<i>make</i>	<i>sell</i>	<i>last</i>	<i>carry</i>	<i>get up</i>
<i>take</i>	<i>move</i>	<i>read</i>	<i>quit</i>	<i>put</i>

- He used to _____ under the oil lamp because there was no electricity.
- I used to _____ at 3 a.m. and go with my parents to get fresh water.
- My grandparents' family used to _____ to a limestone cave in the mountainous area to escape American bombers.
- Primary children used to _____ small porcelain inkpots in the corners of their wooden tables.
- Mrs. Binh used to _____ teaching materials in the evening.
- Many students in Binh Phuoc province used to _____ school because their families were so poor.
- High school students used to _____ the high school graduation examinations.
- The former university entrance exams with two sessions used to _____ one week.
- City dwellers used to _____ rice with shoulder poles in support of the national fight against French colonialism.
- Residents on Hang Bo street used to _____ bamboo baskets.

V. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

<i>unique</i>	<i>history</i>	<i>characteristics</i>	<i>historical</i>
<i>home</i>	<i>houses</i>	<i>variety</i>	<i>popular</i>

Ha Noi's Old Quarter was established hundreds of years ago on the east side of the ancient Thang Long citadel. In the old days, the Old Quarter, a system of narrow streets, alleys and houses, was (1) _____ to several guilds such as bronze casting, forging, jewelry making, wood carving, silk and clothes trading. Small, beautifully styled houses built along with a (2) _____ local culture. Streets in the Old Quarter still have names describing their original goods or craft, for example, Hang Bac or "Silver Street". The ground-floor shops of the (3) _____ here now sell handicrafts, fine arts, and food. But the quarter also has a number of pagodas, temples, (4) _____ relics, and festivals dedicated to the founders of some of the local crafts. Now, many guild streets, like Hang Quat street, don't make fans anymore, but they are remembered as craft streets. The architecture and lifestyle of the local people reflect typical (5) _____ of traditional guild streets in Ha Noi.

VI. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Viet Nam's Past Education System

In comparison with other developing countries, Viet Nam's population enjoys a relatively high standard of education. In the past, Viet Nam's educational system was affected by many cultures, of which the Chinese and French had most significant influence.

The Imperial Academy - the first university in Viet Nam - was built in 1076 under Emperor Ly Nhan Tong for the education of sons of royalty and other high-ranking officials. In 1252, the college was opened to students from various backgrounds besides royal or official ones.

Before the French came, the old-type Mandarin system administered Viet Nam for approximately 2,000 years. As the French took over the government's administration, it was converted from a Confucian system into a Western-oriented one.

In order to participate in the civil service under the French rule, the Vietnamese had to convert to the French system and were required to know the French language. In addition, they had to have a good facility with the new version of their language instead of the traditional Chinese characters which had been in use for hundreds of years.

At the beginning of 1900, the whole system was revised. An educational system of three levels was established: elementary, primary, and secondary education. In addition, the use of the national language (Quoc Ngu) was added to the curriculum. Emphasis was placed on **rote learning**, class discipline and other French educational methods. Several new schools and colleges were established. Accordingly, French became the second language of much importance to the students.

1. In the past, Viet Nam enjoyed a relatively high standard of education with _____.

- A. the effects of the Chinese culture
- B. the reign of Emperor Ly Nhan Tong
- C. the education of sons of royalty
- D. the establishment of the Imperial Academy

2. When the French took control of Vietnamese education, they _____.

- A. made Vietnamese people follow a Western-oriented education
- B. kept the old-type Mandarin system and the French education
- C. converted the French system into the Confucian one
- D. took over the government's administration

3. We can infer from the passage that in the French education system in Viet Nam, _____.

- A. the traditional Chinese characters have been widely used
- B. the Confucian system was banned in the beginning
- C. the national language is the first language and French is the second one
- D. students with different academic levels could attend the Imperial Academy since 1252

4. All of the following are true about the education in Viet Nam under the French rule EXCEPT that _____

- A. the system had three levels
- B. students only used the national language at home
- C. most students paid much attention to French
- D. several new schools and colleges were established

5. The phrase "**rote learning**" in paragraph 5 is closest in meaning to _____.

- A. learning class discipline
- B. learning the Mandarin Chinese for a while
- C. learning something to repeat it from memory
- D. learning the national language in three education levels

VII. Read the situations and write wishes you want to make for them.

1. Many schools are overcrowded because there are so many children in Viet Nam.

I wish _____

2. My school has no playground equipment or extra activities.

I wish _____

3. In the Mekong Delta, small children go through some foot bridges in order to get to school.

I wish _____

4. Kindergarten teachers don't have training courses in making handmade teaching materials.

I wish _____

5. Children from poor families can't go to school because they have to earn money to support their families.

I wish _____

VIII. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. With/ whiteboard/ classroom/ every student/ take part/ lessons.

2. Mistakes/ which/ made/ during guided practice/ easily erased.

3. Nowadays/ smart boards/ provide/ students/ interactive learning environment.

4. Students/ see more diagrams/ charts/ videos/ Internet.

5. Smart boards/ also/ help/ students/ use/ fingers/ write directly/ them.

TEST 2 (UNIT 4)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>s</u> nack | B. ill <u>i</u> terate | C. a <u>c</u> tivity | D. ha <u>b</u> it |
| 2. A. <u>f</u> resh | B. <u>s</u> pecific | C. e <u>n</u> tertain | D. p <u>r</u> eservation |
| 3. A. <u>s</u> eniority | B. <u>s</u> ee <u>k</u> | C. <u>w</u> est | D. <u>p</u> hysical |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 4. A. fa <u>c</u> ility | B. tra <u>d</u> itional | C. hi <u>s</u> torical | D. te <u>v</u> ision |
| 5. A. tu <u>b</u> erculosis | B. se <u>n</u> iority | C. po <u>s</u> sibility | D. te <u>c</u> hnologica |

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. Despite changes brought on by industrialisation and modernisation, shoulder poles _____ the main carriers of 80 percent of the rural population.

- | | | | |
|-------------|----------|---------|-----------|
| A. continue | B. exist | C. stay | D. remain |
|-------------|----------|---------|-----------|

7. The image of an old lady with the traditional *ao dai* on a rickshaw on her way back from market is still so _____ for Vietnamese people.

- | | | | |
|------------|---------------|----------------|-------------------|
| A. meaning | B. meaningful | C. meaningless | D. meaningfulness |
|------------|---------------|----------------|-------------------|

8. Furthermore, traditional _____ help to develop their senses, memory, thoughts, imagination, linguistic capacity and basic concepts about the national culture.

- | | | | |
|-----------|----------|------------|--------------|
| A. habits | B. games | C. customs | D. practices |
|-----------|----------|------------|--------------|

9. Working as street vendors has created countless jobs, and it has become _____ in Ha Noi.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|------------------|---------------|
| A. part of life | B. parts of life | C. part of lives | D. life parts |
|-----------------|------------------|------------------|---------------|

10. "Quang ganh" is two baskets hung from either end of a bamboo pole _____ the shoulders.

- | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-------|----------|
| A. across | B. at | C. on | D. above |
|-----------|-------|-------|----------|

11. Viet Nam's tug-of-war game was also _____ as a UNESCO cultural intangible heritage of humanity in December 2015.

- | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|------------|---------|
| A. realised | B. recognised | C. allowed | D. seen |
|-------------|---------------|------------|---------|

12. People in Bac Ninh province believe that if the tug-of-war team facing the east wins, it will bring bumper crops and good luck, and that the situation will be just the _____ if the team facing the west wins.

- | | | | |
|--------------|---------|----------|-------------|
| A. different | B. same | C. other | D. opposite |
|--------------|---------|----------|-------------|

13. The first university that _____ the western educational system was built in Ha Noi, in 1919 with the medicine school and 1933 with the law school.

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| A. requested | B. applied | C. applied to | D. related |
|--------------|------------|---------------|------------|

14. In the past, white, or violet ao dai _____ by Vietnamese female students as their uniforms.
 A.wore B.used to wear C.was worn D.would be wear
15. We all wish there _____ a smart board in our classroom.
 A.is B.was C.has been D.had been

IV.Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

<i>academically</i>	<i>scholarly</i>	<i>exhibition</i>	<i>tradition</i>
<i>symbolic</i>	<i>features</i>	<i>show</i>	<i>occasion</i>

Through centuries, one of the most (16) _____ elements of a Vietnamese village has been its gate. However, the image is fast disappearing due to rapid urbanisation. One way of keeping the (17) _____ image alive is via photography. A(n) (17) _____ entitled "Old Gates" consisted of nearly 700 photos taken of typical village gates in northern Viet Nam, which opened in Ha Noi on the (18) _____ of the National Cultural Heritage Day. Villages in the north usually have a main gate and one leading to the rice fields alongside minor gates. Many have disappeared forever. Gates differ depending on typical village (19) _____. A major trading village such as Cu Da in Ha Noi would have a sizeable gate while more (20) _____ villages would have their gates engraved and decorated.

V.Read the situations and write wishes you want to make for them.

21. The school authorities can't set holidays based on local weather conditions.

I wish _____

22. That university often doesn't attract enough enrolments for the new school year.

I wish _____

23. We can't study the books written by famous scholars in the Ly and Tran dynasties because Chinese Ming aggressors took them to China.

I wish _____

24. Many small children don't learn how to swim so they often suffer from drowning.

I wish _____

25. Many graduates from college don't have enough skills to meet the requirements of their jobs.

I wish _____

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Rickshaw in Vietnamese Life

It is just simple and ordinary as its (26) _____. No noisy sound from engines, no obscure smoke and no spending too much for commuting. From a long time ago, Vietnamese people have thought of the rickshaw as a (27) _____ means of transportation when going out. It is not only close-knit to Vietnamese but also connected strongly with the foreigners (28) _____ all of them were attracted by this unique means at the first time visiting Viet Nam.

The rickshaw has existed for a long time in Vietnamese life, and become quite necessary as the (29) _____ in a body. Not only the Vietnamese feel (30) _____ to rickshaw, foreigners are also impressed by this unique vehicle. They will be fond of sitting on the rickshaw for a (31) _____ tour around Sword Lake or a round on the streets to (32) _____ dreamy and peaceful photos in the ancient citadel.

Traveling in a rickshaw is the time for peacefully (33) _____ windy sunset and bright sunrises on the beach of Nha Trang or Da Nang or elsewhere. How pleasant it is for you to enjoy a relaxing feeling on the short (34) _____ trip.

Viet Nam is becoming more and more modern; however, rickshaw still (35) _____ through the time and has a stand in the minds of the residents.

26. A.presence B.appearance C.judgment D.performance
 27. A.shared B.recognized C.friendly D.familiar
 28. A.although B.as C. but D.while
 29. A.breath B.air C.rest D.recovery

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|---------------|------------------|
| 30. A.close | B.closed | C.closest | D.closing |
| 31. A.sight | B.sighting | C.sightseeing | D.sightseer |
| 32. A.catch | B.take | C.bring | D.keep |
| 33. A.welcome | B.welcoming | C.welcomed | D.being welcomed |
| 34. A.city | B.town | C.urban | D.field |
| 35. A.keeps | B.continues | C.lives | D.survives |

VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

For formal ceremonies, men would have two additional items, a long **gown** with slits on either side, and a turban, usually in black or brown made of cotton or silk. In feudal times, there were strict dress codes. Ordinary people were not allowed to wear clothes with dyes rather than black, brown or white. Costumes in yellow were reserved for the King. Those in purple and red were reserved for high ranking court officials, while dresses in blue were exclusively worn by petty court officials. Men's dress has gradually changed along with social development.

The traditional set of a long gown and turban gave way to more modern-looking suits, while business shirts and trousers have replaced traditional long sleeved shirts and wide trousers. Traditional costumes still exist and efforts are increasingly being made to restore traditional festivals and entertainment which incorporate traditional costumes.

For women, the outer garment is a special silk gown called an "ao tu than" which is brown or light brown in colour with four slits divided equally on its lower section. The second layer is a gown in a light yellow colour and the third layer is a pink gown. When a woman wears her three gowns, she fastens the buttons on the side, and leave those on the chest unfastened so that it forms a shaped collar. This allows her to show the different colors on the upper part of the three gowns. Today, on formal occasions women wear "ao dai".

36. In the past, the colour was used to represent _____.
- A. the difference between men and women B. formal ceremonies
C. the social development D. the rank in the society
37. In the past, for formal ceremonies men wore _____.
- A. costumes in purple or yellow not like the King
B. a long gown and a turban in black or brown
C. costumes made of red cotton or silk
D. dresses in blue as petty court officials
38. Traditional festivals _____.
- A. promote traditional costumes B. encourage modern-looking suits
C. replace traditional suits by business ones D. make men's dresses change
39. All of the following are true about women's traditional costumes EXCEPT that _____.
- A. the gowns have different colours on the upper part
B. we can see a shaped collar in the front
C. the two inner gowns cannot be seen
D. the outer gown has four equal parts on its lower section
40. The word "**gown**" in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to _____.
- A. a long dress worn on formal occasions
B. a woman's dress, especially a long one
C. a long piece of clothing worn by judges
D. piece of clothing that is worn over other clothes to protect them

TEST 3 UNIT 4

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. a. <u>e</u> motion | b. in <u>d</u> ecisive | c. ob <u>e</u> sity | d. be <u>l</u> ievable |
| 2. a. ha <u>n</u> ging | b. be <u>l</u> ong | c. si <u>n</u> ger | d. a <u>n</u> ger |
| 3. a. behav <u>e</u> d | b. pass <u>e</u> d | c. enterta <u>i</u> ned | d. chang <u>e</u> d |

4. a. imagination b. average c. language d. appearance
 5. a. increase b. surprise c. release d. promise

II. Choose the word that has the main stress placed differently from the others.

1. a. worthwhile b. igloo c. habit d. practice
 2. a. obese b. dogsled c. extend d. remote
 3. a. household b. suppose c. Arctic d. diet
 4. a. transformation b. independence c. understanding d. illiterate
 5. a. uncontrollable b. biological c. particularly d. seniority

III. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

1. The children were acting _____ the story of the birth of Jesus.
 a. out b. on c. down d. at
 2. The manager told me to pass _____ the message I had just read.
 a. in b. to c. on d. for
 3. Stern insisted that she come downtown so that he could explain this to her _____.
 a. face b. direct c. indirect d. face to face
 4. Youngsters love to eat from street _____ for the cheap price.
 a. vans b. vendors c. trucks d. business
 5. Ben _____ a lot in his job but now, since his promotion, he doesn't.
 a. used travel b. used to travel c. used to traveling d. is used to traveling
 6. I wish I _____ find the time to do more reading.
 a. may b. will c. could d. can
 7. When I see the kids playing football, I almost wish I _____ their age again.
 a. was b. am c. would be d. could be
 8. Where _____ before you moved here?
 a. did you use to live b. did you used to live
 c. used you to live d. do you use to live
 9. I've just found 20 dollars in my pocket! _____.
 a. How crazy b. That's right c. Thanks a lot d. How cool
 10. "In the past, marriages used to be arranged by parents."
 "_____"
 a. Sure. That's right. b. I suppose it was.
 c. Really? I can't imagine that d. That's cool!

IV. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. What should _____ (do) to preserve the local tradition?
 2. This used _____ (be) the best restaurant in town.
 3. When her train got to the station, we _____ (wait) on the platform.
 4. If you _____ (go) to bed earlier, you _____ (not be) so tired.
 5. I only wish you _____ (be) all as happy as I am.
 6. The doctor told him to stop _____ (smoke) and take a trip.
 7. He is so annoying! He _____ (always/ leave) his things everywhere.
 8. I have decided _____ (study) more and improve my overall average.
 9. As far as I know, he's coining. But I _____ (not speak) to him for weeks.
 10. I will call you when the guests _____ (arrive).

V. Put the verb info the correct form.

1. Andy wished that he _____ (can) think of a way of helping.
 2. The teacher wish that her students _____ (pay) more attention to the lessons.
 3. I wish you _____ (not live) so far away.
 4. I wish Dam Sen Water Park _____ (be) near my house.
 5. He wishes he _____ (drive) a Lamborghini in Paris.
 6. I just wish that everything _____ (can) be as it used to be.
 7. Don't you ever wish you _____ (have) someone to share your troubles with?

8. I wish I _____(eat) Spanish food in Barcelona.
9. I wish I _____(know) how to use a computer.
10. These seats are very uncomfortable. I wish we _____(travel) first class.

VI. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. As a _____ businessman, he couldn't imagine real poverty. (wealth)
2. I can never make up stories – I have absolutely no _____. (imagine)
3. People who are _____ lack the basic reading and writing skills. (literate)
4. People didn't pay much attention to _____ appearance a decade ago. (physic)
5. Overeating is surely the main cause of _____. (obese)
6. _____ couples do not have the same rights as married couples. (marry)
7. This approach can help identify common _____ and their causes. (behave)
8. She appears to actually like the man, which I find _____. (credible)
9. Today, _____ and loyalty mean nothing in the workplace. (senior)
10. I found the ending of the novel a bit _____. (believe)

VII. Read the text then do the tasks.

LIFE IN THE PAST VS LIFE IN THE PRESENT

Over the last century, there have been many significant changes in the way we live. Obviously, it is difficult to compare the life of ancient people and the life of the people living in the twenty-first century because so many changes have occurred. Even the changes that have occurred over the last ten years are amazing.

To start with, in the past people had to work harder as they did not have tools and machines to make their work easier. Today, most of the difficult and dangerous work is done by computers and other powerful machines. In the past living conditions were not as comfortable as they are now. Besides, many people could not afford household appliances like a fridge or a vacuum cleaner because those used to be luxurious goods. Another difference between living now and in the past is the fact that nowadays education is accessible to everyone. In the past men were mainly the only ones educated and women were not allowed into public or private schools. Besides, nowadays it is much easier to find the educational materials and the information you need – thanks to the Internet. We are able to speak to a friend who is on the other corner of the world because we are connected 24/7. Nevertheless, people had better relationships with the neighbors in years gone by.

All things considered, it is an obvious conclusion that life has changed significantly during the course of history. In some ways, it is definitely easier to live in the present. On the other hand, however, life now is much faster and stressful than it used to be in the past. The standard of living has definitely improved but it can be discussed whether the quality of our lives is also better.

A. Decide whether the following sentences are true (T) or false (F).

1. Life nowadays is the same as life of our ancestors.
2. Technology has made our lives easier.
3. In the past, household appliances were very expensive.
4. Public schools allowed females and males to be educated in the same schools.
5. We can use the internet to communicate with people around the world.

B. Answer the questions.

6. Is life today faster or slower than life in the past?

7. What has happened to the standard of living?

8. What makes it easy to access information?

9. Who or what does some difficult jobs for us?

10. What makes our lives easier at home?

VIII. Read the text carefully, then do the tasks.

Changes in Food Habits

Before Stone Age, people used to eat fruits, leaves and anything they found from the forest. However, this habit changed into hunting animals, preserving food items and planting and growing vegetables, which eventually led into farming different crops like maize, corn, and rice. People were healthy, they rarely had diseases and never needed extra exercise because their daily work kept their bodies running.

At present, we have turned the agriculture into a mass scale production, including machinery, technology and pesticides, all of which came in with the green revolution. With green revolution agriculture and the traditional farming culture turned upside down. As far nor now, farmers who are able to cope up with the multinational cooperation's and their large-scale, expensive products, pesticides and high-yielding varieties of seeds, keep producing crops for the market. Yet the traditional, low-income farmers even today, especially in Asian countries, are in a dire state.

Fast food is another major factor in modern food habits. Although many people find it convenient, it leads to many health conditions. Today people are unhealthy, needs medicine and functions on diets and exercise machines.

A. Decide whether the following sentences are true (T) or false (F).

1. People in the past ate healthy food so they rarely had diseases.
2. The green revolution is the decrease in agriculture production.
3. The green revolution caused agriculture to change completely.
4. Farmers nowadays can't meet the great demand of the food market.
5. Fast food is convenient but it's not good for health.

B. Answer the following questions.

6. In the past, why didn't people need extra exercise?

7. Who is still in the serious situation despite the development in agriculture?

8. How are people nowadays compared to those in the past?

IX. Rewrite the following sentences using a *wish* construction.

1. It's a pity my computer is out of order.

2. I'd like my younger brother to concentrate more on his studies.

3. I'm sorry I don't have time to go to the cinema with you.

4. It's a pity John can't come to my birthday party this weekend.

5. I d like you to take me to the zoo after school.

6. It's a pity it is raining heavily outside.

7. It's a pity my favorite book is out of stock.

8. I'm sorry I'm not old enough to drive a car.

9. It's a pity they are having a class at the moment.

10. It's a pity my school doesn't organize outdoor activities.

X. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word

in capital.

1. That house is part of the town's heritage, but the council is demolishing it. (WISH)

2. I'm not good at English, so I can't become a tour guide. (IF)

3. Mary said she would hold an event about skin care the following month. (WILL)

4. He gave her the book "The fault in our stars" as a birthday gift. (SHE)

5. He feels sorry that he can't come to his brother's wedding. (WISHES)

6. "If I were you, I would no longer spend most of my time chatting on Facebook", he said. (ADVISED)

7. When did you start searching for some facts in the past? (HOW)

8. My mother no longer cooked for me since I married my wife. (USED)

XI. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first sentence.

1. They often went to school by bike when they were young.
→ They used _____
2. She has taught her children to play piano for 4 years.
→ She started _____
3. It's a pity I can't cook as well as my mom.
→ I wish _____
4. He doesn't have meals with his family any more.
→ He used _____
5. It took me a long time to be accustomed to living in the country.
→ It took me a long time to get _____
6. My school is near my home, so I go to school on foot every day.
→ My school isn't _____
7. I would like my sister to improve her English speaking.
→ I wish _____
8. Vietnamese people only eat dried candied fruit at Tet.
→ Dried candied fruit _____

UNIT 5: WONDERS OF VIET NAM**A. VOCABULARY**

1. administrative (adj)	/əd'mɪnɪstrətɪv/:	thuộc về hoặc liên quan đến việc quản lý; hành chính
2. astounding (adj)	/ə'staʊndɪŋ/:	làm sững sờ, làm sững sốt
3. cavern (n)	/'kævən/:	hang lớn, động
4. citadel (n)	/'sɪtədəl/:	thành lũy, thành trì
5. complex (n)	/'kɒmpleks/:	khu liên hợp, quần thể
6. contestant (n)	/'kɒn'testənt/:	thí sinh
7. fortress (n)	/'fɔ:trəs/:	pháo đài
8. geological (adj)	/ˌdʒi:ə'lɒdʒɪkl/:	(thuộc) địa chất
9. limestone (n)	/'laɪmstəʊn/:	đá vôi
10. measure (n)	/'meʒə(r)/:	biện pháp, phương sách
11. paradise (n)	/'pærədəɪs/:	thiên đường
12. picturesque (adj)	/ˌpɪktʃə'resk/:	đẹp, gây ấn tượng mạnh (phong cảnh)
13. recognition (n)	/ˌrekəg'nɪʃn/:	sự công nhận, sự thừa nhận

14. rickshaw (n)	/ˈrɪkʃəʊ/:	xe xích lô, xe kéo
15. round (in a game) (n)	/raʊnd/:	hiệp, vòng (trong trò chơi)
16. sculpture (n)	/ˈskʌlptʃə(r)/:	bức tượng (điêu khắc)
17. setting (n)	/ˈsetɪŋ/:	khung cảnh, môi trường
18. spectacular (adj)	/spekˈtækjələ(r)/:	đẹp mắt, ngoạn mục, hùng vĩ
19. structure (n)	/ˈstrʌktʃə(r)/:	công trình kiến trúc, công trình xây dựng
20. tomb (n)	/tu:m/:	ngôi mộ

B. GRAMMAR

1. CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG KHÔNG NGÔI (The impersonal passive)

Cách dùng	- Câu bị động không ngôi được dùng để diễn đạt ý kiến của người khác. - Câu bị động không ngôi thường chứa những động từ tường thuật như <i>say, think, believe, know, hope, expect, report, understand, claim...</i> ở dạng quá khứ phân từ (VpII)	
Cấu trúc	It + is / was + VpII + that + S + V (Người ta nói / nghĩ / tin...rằng)	
Ví dụ	Active (chủ động)	Passive (bị động)
	People say that he lives abroad.	It is said that he lives abroad. (Người ta nói rằng anh ấy sống ở nước ngoài)
	People said that this man stole the car.	It was said that this man stole the car. (Người ta nói rằng anh ấy đã lấy cắp chiếc xe ô tô.)
	People think she is a great actress.	It is thought that she is a great actress. (Người ta nghĩ rằng cô ấy là một diễn viên giỏi)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Gạch chân những lỗi sai trong câu và sửa lại cho đúng.

- It reported that the storm had destroyed more than 100 houses in that area. _____
- People are thought that travelling is very costly. _____
- It was claimed that there will be financial support for the homeless. _____
- Did it said that the building was reconstructed in 1967? _____
- Do people believed that learning is a lifetime journey? _____
- They aren't believe that they will lose the competition. _____
- Was it rumor last year that Jane set off for Paris and never returned? _____
- It is claimed by the authorities last year that they would help the poor. _____

Bài 2: Sắp xếp các từ đã cho thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

- believed / people / will / is / on / Mars / future / the / widely / It / that / live / in. _____
- that / £200 / was / was / it / reported / donated / build / to / park / local / the. _____
- it / yesterday / that / Jim / would / meeting / to / come / the / Was / expected? _____
- is / that / is / a / view / hotel / from / of / spectacular / the / It / claimed / there / mountain / that. _____
- in / It / Vietnam / is / that / should / believed / rickshaw / by / travelling / try / tourists. _____
- that / that / there / many / cottages / It / many / was / rumored / picturesque / village / in. _____
- brehtaking / of / claimed / was / lake / that / could / be / scene / here / It / a / the / seen / from. _____
- these / for / road / rumored / that / Is / trees / it / be / cut / down / construction / will. _____

Bài 3: Chuyển những câu chủ động sang thành câu bị động.

- They believe that Jim is going to study abroad. _____
- People rumored that there was a ghost in that house. _____

3. Someone said that Jane would be able to win the contest.
4. They claimed that everything they said was true.
5. They reported that there was a serious accident on the main road.
6. They don't think that this camera costs that much.
7. Did they claim that they had managed to solve the problem?
8. People didn't expect that the building collapsed after the storm

Bài 4: Dựa vào những từ cho trước, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. It / widely / believe / that / ghosts / really / exist.
2. It / rumor / last / year / that / group / of / gangster / destroy / part / of / the / building.
3. It / report / that / there / be / increase / in / number / of / tourists / last / year.
4. It / think / the winner / be / team / A/ but / it / turn / out / to be / team B.
5. It / claim / by / local / authorities / that / community house / build / next / year.
6. It / forecast / that / terrible / storm / come.
7. It / tell / Jim / take / gap / year / after / he / finish / high / school.
8. It / believe / national / heritages / need / preserve.

B. CÁCH DÙNG ĐỘNG TỪ SUGGEST (SUGGEST + V-ING / CLAUSE WITH SHOULD)

Cấu trúc	1. S + suggest + V-ing 2. S + suggest + (that) + S + (should) + V nguyên mẫu
Cách dùng	- Ta sử dụng cấu trúc với <i>suggest</i> khi đưa ra một đề xuất ý kiến. - Cấu trúc <i>suggest + V-ing</i> được dùng để nói chung chung, không ám chỉ một người cụ thể. - Cấu trúc <i>suggest that + S + V</i> khi muốn khuyên một người hoặc một nhóm người cụ thể.
Ví dụ	I suggest (that) we go out to have dinner. I know a very good restaurant. (Tôi đề nghị chúng ta ra ngoài ăn tối. Tôi biết một nhà hàng rất ngon.) Her doctor suggested that she should reduce her working hours and take more exercise. (Bác sĩ của cô ấy đề nghị rằng cô ấy nên giảm thời gian làm việc và tập thể dục nhiều hơn) He suggested travelling together for safety, since the area was so dangerous. (Anh ấy đề xuất nên đi du lịch cùng nhau cho an toàn vì khu vực đó rất nguy hiểm)``
Chú ý	Trong trường hợp dùng mệnh đề 'that' thì động từ theo sau luôn ở dạng nguyên mẫu không 'to'. Ví dụ: The doctor suggest that he lose some weight. (Chủ ngữ là <i>he</i> nhưng động từ <i>lose</i> không chia.

Bài 5: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

1. My father suggested that I (took / take) an English course this year.
2. My brother suggested (playing / to play) cards while waiting for our mother.
3. The doctor suggests that Jim (do / does) more exercises to keep fit.

- Mr. Brown suggests that his son (doing / do) his homework before hanging out with friends.
- Jane suggested (should hold / holding) a party next week.
- Peter suggested that I (changed / change) my sandals into rain boots because it was raining outside.
- The mayor suggests that there (should be / was) more trees along the main road.
- I suggested (we took / taking) part in the competition because of the huge prize.
- Does Mr. Brown suggest that Peter (goes / go) to school on his own.
- My professor suggested that I (should not choose / not choose) that course for the next semester.

Bài 6: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

- They suggest that you (keep) _____ working hard to achieve your goal.
- Peter suggested that Jane (not spend) _____ too much time on computer.
- My friend suggested (not take) _____ the dog for a walk as it was snowing outside.
- The bookseller suggested his customer (buy) _____ the newly released book a famous author.
- My teacher suggests that we (use) _____ paperback dictionary to look up new words instead of using online dictionary.
- It is suggested that children (learn) _____ a foreign language at an early age.
- The tour guide suggested that we (try) _____ the local specialties.
- My classmates suggest (throw) _____ a party to celebrate the Teacher's Day.

Bài 7: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

- My neighbor / suggest / have / dinner / together.

- My father / suggest / my sister / visit / my grandparent / more / often.

- They / suggest / there / be / more / streetlight / in / this / neighborhood.

- Mary / suggest / go / out / for / picnic / tomorrow.

- Salesman / suggest / Jim / choose / black / trousers.

- Peter / suggest / listen / to / radio / instead of / watch / TV.

- I / suggest / you / not / be / lazy / anymore.

- They / suggest / sit / in / circle / and / share / stories / with / others.

Bài 8: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong các câu sau và sửa lại cho đúng.

- Jim suggested playing the piano and sang along. _____
- The teacher suggested that I should rewrite my essay and submitted it later. _____
- The instructor suggested that Jane paid more attention to his instructions. _____
- Peter suggest playing badminton every day after school. _____
- My team suggested to work together and come up with the solution. _____
- Mr. Johnson suggested that there was an air-conditioner in this room. _____
- I suggest the room is cleaned before I come back. _____
- My parents suggested me go out and make some friends. _____

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 9: Chuyển những câu chủ động sau thành câu bị động.

- No one expected that I would fail the final exam.

- Do you think that they will have the chance to visit that place?

- They expected that this summer holiday would be swelteringly hot.

- They reported that a vast area of forest in my hometown was destroyed.

5. Did they believe that the information was true?

6. Did anyone hope that there would be a significant change in the standards of living?

7. They never believe that Peter and Jane will get married.

8. People know that there is no life on Mars.

Bài 10: Hoàn thành những câu sau với dạng đúng của những động từ cho sẵn.

Get	Hold	Visit	Buy
Go	Travel	Pay	Carry

1. My foreign friend suggested _____ sightseeing in the suburbs this weekend.

2. Mr. Brown suggested _____ the most famous tourist attractions in Vietnam this summer holiday.

3. My mother suggested that I _____ back my energy after studying hard by going on a picnic.

4. Peter suggested that I _____ my children some bracelets as souvenir after my business trip to Chinese.

5. Mary suggested that we _____ to the South of Vietnam this summer.

6. Did the teacher suggest that we _____ a project on preserving wonders of Vietnam?

7. Peter suggests _____ a small party to celebrate his friend's birthday tomorrow.

8. My uncle suggested that our family _____ a visit to Huong Pagoda.

Bài 11: Dựa vào những thông tin cho sẵn, hãy viết câu gợi ý với 'suggest'

0. 'Peter should learn English.' The teacher said.

The teacher suggested that Peter (should) learn English.

1. 'It's a good idea that you take a rest from work.' My sister said to me.

2. 'How about going to the sea this weekend?' Tom asked.

3. 'Jim, you should never play truant again.' Jane said.

4. 'Why don't we go out and enjoy the weather?' My mom said.

5. 'If you visit Hanoi, you should go to Hoan Kiem Lake.' My friend told me.

6. 'Jane, why don't you finish your homework before going out?' James's mother said.

7. 'Let's work out the solution together!' Peter says.

8. My father advised me to take any opportunities that I had.

Bài 12: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng

Ha Long Bay

Ha Long Bay is one of the most famous tourist (1) _____ in Viet Nam. It (2) _____ among the Seven Wonders of the World. In the old Vietnamese, 'Ha Long' literally means 'descending dragons.' (3) _____ its popularity, not many people know about the legend behind its name. (4) _____ has it that at the early time of the country, Vietnamese people had to fight against aggressive invaders from the North through the sea. The Jade Emperor then sent the Mother Dragon and her children to help Vietnamese (5) _____ the enemy and protect their homeland. The dragons destroyed the enemy's army by fire and giant emeralds from their mouths. These emeralds then (6) _____ around the battlefield on the sea and created a defensive wall, which made the enemy's ships all sink. It (7) _____ that the wall of emerald turned (8) _____ island and islets that we can see today. After the battle, The Mother Dragon and her children didn't come back to the heaven, but stayed with the ancient Vietnamese and help people build their country.

1. A. appeals

B. attentions

C. attractions

D. attachments

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 2. A. is listed | B. is listing | C. lists | D. listed |
| 3. A. But | B. Yet | C. Despite | D. In spite |
| 4. A. Story | B. Tale | C. Fable | D. Legend |
| 5. A. defeat | B. defeated | C. defeating | D. are defeated |
| 6. A. went | B. scattered | C. turned | D. mattered |
| 7. A. is believed | B. believes | C. was believed | D. believed |
| 8. A. into | B. out | C. off | D. on |

Bài 13: Đọc đoạn văn sau và trả lời câu hỏi.

Weather forecast from dawn to dusk on 10 March.

General:

Cloudy, some rain

Areas of flow pressure will move east across the British Isles

South East and Eastern England:

Cloudy, a little rain or mist in places at first. Some sunny intervals developing. Wind southerly, light to moderate. Mild, maximum temperature 11 to 12°C.

Central, North West, Northern and North East England:

Mostly cloudy, some sunny intervals, rain spreading from west later. Wind southerly, moderate to strong. Temperature a little above normal, maximum 10 to 12°C.

South West England and Wales:

Cloudy, rain spreading from west, continuing well into the night. Wind southerly, moderate. Temperature a little above normal, maximum 10 to 12°C.

Central, Southern and North West Scotland:

Cloudy, occasional rain or mist, more steady rain spreading from west. Wind southerly, moderate or strong. Temperature a little above normal, maximum 8 to 10°C.

North East Scotland, Orkney, Shetland:

Mostly cloudy, a little rain or mist, more steady rain later. Wind southerly, strong. Temperature a little above normal, 7 to 9°C.

OUTLOOK FOR THE NEXT 24 HOURS

Occasional rain in some areas will die out and be followed by brighter weather spreading from the west. Mild at first, becoming cooler.

- In which part of the British Isles will the weather be driest on 10 March?
A. South East and Eastern England B. Central, Northwest, Northern and North East England.
C. Southwest England and Wales. D. Central, Southwest and Northwest Scotland.
- In general the pattern of weather across the British Isles on 10 March is that
A. rain will die out later in the day. B. rain will increase during the day.
C. it will rain on and off all day. D. it will rain steadily in most places.
- Where will there be most rain during the day?
A. Southeast and Eastern England. B. Central, Northwest, Northern and Northeast England.
C. Southwest England and Wales. D. Northeast Scotland, Orkney, Shetland.
- The temperature will not rise above 10°C in the following area:
A. Southeast and Eastern England. B. Central, North West, Northern and Northeast England.
C. Southwest England and Wales. D. Central, Southern and Northwest Scotland.
- It appears that in general the weather on 11 March will be
A. very much the same. B. much wetter.
C. much warmer. D. more sunny.

C.EXERCISES

TEST 1 UNIT 5

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>g</u> reat | B. <u>t</u> reasure | C. <u>m</u> asure | D. <u>p</u> leasure |
| 2. A. <u>a</u> ncient | B. <u>c</u> ave | C. <u>c</u> avern | D. <u>a</u> ging |
| 3. A. <u>s</u> pectacular | B. <u>s</u> tructure | C. <u>s</u> culpture | D. <u>p</u> icturesque |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 4. A. contestant | B. picturesque | C. committee | D. astound |
| 5. A. imperial | B. spectacular | C. historical | D. recognition |

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. Trang An Landscape Complex is renowned for its diverse ecosystem, unique natural beauty and _____ characteristics.
A.geology B.geological C.environmental D.ecological
7. The Ho Dynasty Citadel has a palace _____ with marble roads that connect each palace.
A.area B.setting C.complex D.building
8. The towers of the My Son sanctuary are the most significant _____ of the My Son civilization.
A.structures B.arrangements C.apartments D.plans
9. The Thang Long Imperial Citadel was the _____ of political power for nearly seven centuries without interruption.
A.middle B.point C.system D.centre
10. In 1978, the south and north Cat Tien parks were put _____ the State's protection.
A.of B.under C.above D.with
11. It _____ that China dug up the ocean floor to build artificial islands.
A.says B.said C.would be said D.is said
12. The public suggested that the factories _____ with waste treatment system.
A.would equip B.would be equipped C.should equip D.should be equipped
13. The local government suggested _____ a road through the Nam Cat Tien National Park.
A.build B.to build C.building D.being built
14. It _____ that some foreigners had collected rubbish on Cat Ba Beach.
A.reported B.was reported C.could report D.had been reported
15. The most important thing is that we _____ foreign tourists come back to Viet Nam again .
A.cause B.should cause C.will make D.should make

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

<i>species</i>	<i>destinations</i>	<i>area</i>	<i>valleys</i>
<i>reserve</i>	<i>tourists</i>	<i>limestone</i>	<i>ecosystems</i>

Cuc Phuong National Park is situated in Ninh Binh province. This park is known as the first national park and the largest nature (16) _____ in the country. The park consists of a range of mountains and green (17) _____, as well as a number of (18) _____ caves, many of which are ideal (19) _____ for exploration. Cuc Phuong is also home to lots of fauna and flora, and some of them are listed on the Red Book of Viet Nam of endangered (20) _____.

V. Fill in each blank in the sentences with the correct word from the box.

<i>geological</i>	<i>setting</i>	<i>complex</i>	<i>rickshaw</i>
<i>limes stone</i>	<i>fishing</i>	<i>architectural</i>	<i>biodiversity</i>

1. Like a local, you should take an afternoon _____ ride through the bustling streets of Ha Noi's Old Quarter.
2. We can continue our journey and explore the fascinating Cua Van floating _____ village in Ha Long Bay.
3. With outstanding _____ values, Ha Long Bay was recognized as the world natural heritage site twice in 1994 and 2000.
4. Ha Long Bay is also home to high _____ with typical eco-systems and thousands of fauna and flora species.
5. Located in the _____ mountains of Phong Nha - Ke Bang National Park, Son Doong Cave was explored by a group of scientists from British Cave Research Association.
6. The Hue Citadel, which is a _____ of monuments, has been officially recognized by the UNESCO as a World Heritage Site.

7. Hue is placed in a wonderful _____: the Ngu Binh Mountain in the south, the sand dunes of Con Hen and Con Da Vien on the Perfume River as "dragon on the left, tiger on the right" to protect the citadel.

8. Most of the buildings in Hoi An, which reflect the traditional _____ style of the 18th and 19th centuries, are carefully preserved.

VI. Here are some things we hear about Po Nagar Cham Towers. Write sentences about it, using the impersonal passive with the verbs given in brackets.

1. The site of Po Nagar Cham Towers was first used for worship as early as the 2nd century AD. (think)

2. The original wooden structure was destroyed by the Javanese in AD 774. (believe)

3. It was replaced by a stone-and-brick temple in 784. (say)

4. Yang Ino Po Nagar ruled over the southern part of the Cham kingdom. (consider)

5. A gold sculpture in the North Tower was taken away by Khmer raiders in 918. (claim)

6. The stone statue of the goddess Uma Mahishasuramardini was later placed in the North Tower in 965. (believe)

7. The Central Tower was built partly of recycled bricks in the 12th century on the site of a structure dating from the 7th century. (think)

8. The South Tower was dedicated to the god Shiva. (know)

VII. Complete the second sentences with the same meaning, using "suggest + V-ing/clause with should".

1. Mary wanted all of us to visit Po Nagar Cham Towers after lunch.

Mary suggested _____

2. "Let's go to the cinema tonight," he suggested.

He suggested _____

3. "Never borrow money from friends," my father said.

My father suggested that _____

4. Nick told the stranger. "If I were you, I would not write anything on the walls of the cavern."

Nick suggested that _____

5. I didn't know whether her performance was good or not, so the best way was to watch it again.

I suggested _____

VIII. Write sentences about Cham towers in Binh Dinh, using the imperative passive with the verbs given in brackets.

1. The ancient Champa dynasties built many elaborate temples and shrines. (believe)

2. The Cham towers in Binh Dinh province are the biggest in Southeast Asia. (claim)

3. The Cham towers are located in the Do Ban Citadel. (think)

4. The Binh Dinh towers are a harmonious combination of architectural art from the Champa and Khmer cultures. (consider)

4.The royal palaces/ and most structures/ complex/ bad condition.

5.The relics/ its ruined foundations/ on display/ museum.

TEST 2 (UNIT 5)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. A.shrine | B.surprising | C.pilgrim | D.island |
| 2. A.structure | B.culture | C.sculpture | D.future |
| 3. A.cavern | B.citadel | C.complex | D.contestant |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|
| 4. A.valuable | B.memorable | C.historical | D.fascinating |
| 5. A.geological | B.archaeology | C.administrative | D.ecological |

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. Hundreds of thousands of _____ travel to Perfume Pagoda to pray for happiness and prosperity in the coming year.
A.passengers B.holiday-makers C.pilgrimages D.pilgrims
7. India will provide technical experts, supporting equipment and materials necessary for the restoration of _____ in My Son.
A.mosques B.towers C.churches D.pagodas
8. Talking about Tay Phuon Pagoda means talking about a treasure of _____, an invaluable cultural and historical heritage.
A.sculpture B.objects C.items D.stone
9. The Thang Long Imperial Citadel was built on the location of a Chinese _____ dating from the 7th century.
A.battle B.fortress C.border D.soldier
10. Architect Kasik is honoured with his statue in Hoi An in _____ for his restoration work done at the My Son Sanctuary.
A.agreement B.knowledge C.recognition D.admiration
11. The expert explained that the upper _____ of the bridge was in very bad condition.
A.foundation B.roof C.building D.structure
12. Ha Noi's four sacred temples, the _____ of Ha Noi, were built to defend the four directions (East, West, South, North) of the ancient Thang Long capital city.
A.energy B.spirits C.communication D.feelings
13. It _____ that the Perfume Pagoda is located in the interior of a cave to the top of the Huong Tich mountains.
A.says B.is said C.is spoken D.is told
14. It _____ that 70 tons of dead fish washed ashore along more than 200 kilometres of Viet Nam's central coastline in early April.
A.had been reported B.were reported C.was reported D.had reported
15. It _____ that the road through the national park will not affect the environment and living habitat of wild animals there.
A.is thought B.thinks C.has thought D.had been thought

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

<i>breathtaking</i>	<i>unique</i>	<i>man-made</i>	<i>vast</i>
<i>rich</i>	<i>magical</i>	<i>ecological</i>	<i>deep</i>

Cat Ba National Park is dominated by limestone areas where there are numerous waterfalls, caves and caverns. It is home to 32 types of mammals. Forests here have many unique types with (16) _____ features.

Being the roof of Cat Ba Island, Ngu Lam Peak offers visitors a (17) _____ view of the island. Experiencing a trekking to the peak will give you a good chance to have a (18) _____ understanding into the natural beauty as well as (19) _____ culture of the locals. It also has hundreds of large and small beaches, but Cat Co beaches attract tourists most by the (20) _____ natural landscape.

V. Complete the second sentences with the same meaning, using "suggest + V-ing/ clause with should".

21. "I will give you the answer by the end of this week." Tom said to Mi.

Tom suggested _____

22. "Why don't you ask your parents for advice, Nick?" said Phong.

Phong suggested that _____

23. "Why don't you get your hair cut, Nick?" said his mother.

Nick's mother suggested that _____

24. The doctor said, "You really ought to rest for a few days, Veronica."

The doctor suggested that _____

25. "You'd better apologize to your teacher for being late." said Phong's mother.

Phong's mother suggested that _____

VI. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Son Doong Cave

Located in the limestone mountains of Phong Nha - Ke Bang National Park. Son Doong Cave was first found in 1991 by Ho Khanh, a local man. In 2009, the cave was explored and published by a group of scientists from British Cave Research Association.

Son Doong Cave was formed from 2 to 5 million years ago, when the river flowed through the limestone mountain area and was buried. The water eroded limestone and created an underground tunnel. In soft limestone areas, the collapse of tunnel ceiling formed large holes which became giant domes afterward. The cave is about 200m high, 200m wide and at least 8.5km long. Especially, Son Doong consists of two entrances, which is unique among explored caves in Phong Nha - Ke Bang National Park. Exploring the cave, visitors were surprised with spectacular scenery of numerous stalactites of which some giant stalagmites are more than 70 metres high. Deep inside the cave exists a grandiose tropical jungle called "Garden of Eden" by the explorers. The jungle is home to a diversified system of fauna and flora. Besides, the cave possesses a 2.5-kilometre underground river. Not far from the "Garden of Eden" lies an enormous "pearl collection" consisting of tens of thousands of small stone pieces in dry ponds, contributing to magnificent beauty of the cave.

1. The reason why Son Doong Cave was formed is that _____.

A. an underground tunnel was buried in the area

B. the limestone areas were soft

C. it only happened from 2 to 5 million years ago

D. the river was buried in the limestone mountains

2. The most important feature of "Garden of Eden" is _____.

A. the biodiversity

B. giant stalagmites

C. the biggest length

D. the river below

3. We can infer from the passage that _____.

A. tunnels and giant domes were formed at the same time

B. "pearl collection" contains a lot of precious stones

C. we can live the cave with the air and water

D. "Garden of Eden" is in the underground river

4. All of the following are the wonderful features of Son Doong Cave EXCEPT _____.

A. tropical jungle inside with the biodiversity

B.spectacular scenery of numerous stalactites and stalagmites

C.a river flowing over 2.5 kilometers along the cave

D.the big sizes of the cave and the giant domes

5. The thing that makes it different from other caves in Phong Nha – Ke Bang National Park is _____.

A. stalactites and stalagmites

B. the two entrances into the cave

C. its discovery by a local man

D. large holes in the ceiling

VII. Read the passage, and do the tasks that follow.

Around 60 kilometers southwest of Ha Noi, Perfume Pagoda is one of the largest religious sites in Huong Son Commune, My Duc District. It comprises a complex of pagodas and Buddhist shrines built into the limestone cliffs of Perfume Mount, spreading alongside the mountain up to the peak. The complex's center is Inner Temple, right inside Huong Tich Cavern. Huge numbers of pilgrims flock to the site during Perfume Pagoda Festival, which begins in the middle of the first lunar month and lasts until the middle of the third one (or from February to April) in order to pray for happiness and prosperity in the coming year. Also, it is a very popular opportunity for young couples to meet and for numerous romances to be formed. On this special occasion, a wide range of traditional cultural activities is incorporated. Perfume Pagoda is not only a religious site, but a great sight-seeing spot in Viet Nam as well.

Task 1. Read the passage again and answer the questions.

1. Where can a complex of pagodas and Buddhist shrines be found in Huong Son Commune

2. How long does Perfume Pagoda festival last?

3. What do people go to Perfume Pagoda festival for?

4. What activities can people take part in?

5. Why is the festival also popular to young couples?

VIII. Read the passage, and do the tasks that follow

Ha Long Bay: one of the greatest natural wonders of the world

There is a saying that if you have not visited Ha Long Bay, you have not yet been to Viet Nam. On the other hand, we can say that if you have not visited Ha Long Bay, you have not yet seen the most beautiful place in the world. It takes us around 4 hours by bus to travel 180 km from Ha Noi towards the northeast to Ha Long Bay.

Ha Long Bay has been twice recognized by UNESCO as a World Heritage Site in 1994 and in 2000, and also that Ha Long Bay is in the second place in the worldwide competition of the World's Seven Natural Wonders. 1,969 limestone islands of various shapes, sizes, and in different green and amazing colours rise above the sea level in an area of more than 1,500 square kilometers that creates this world heritage site Ha Long Bay still keeps its historical and cultural values.

Ha Long Bay is as attractive and beautiful throughout the four seasons: spring, summer, autumn, and winter. Traveling on small sailboats among hundreds of limestone islands, one may visit the amazing Surprise Cave, the floating fishing village, and see how the locals live, which are top of the list of things to do here. On Titov Island, one may swim and relax on the beach or enjoy a kayaking programme to the nearby Luon Cave and much more.

The experience of visiting Ha Long Bay is unforgettable, where you will see something that will stay in your mind and eyes for years. You will enjoy meeting Vietnamese people and tasting their delicious food. You will have fresh air all day and night, especially if you wake up early in the morning and watch the sun rise on the deck coming slowly through the islands. Be sure not to miss visiting Ha Long Bay in your lifetime.

Task 1. Identify whether the statements are true (T), or false (F).

1. Ha Long Bay is one of the most interesting tourist attractions in Viet Nam.

☐

T

☐

F

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 2. It is in the second place of UNESCO's World Heritage Sites. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 3. The islands are on the setting of many colours. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 4. Tourists can enjoy fresh seafood that is raised in the bay. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 5. You have to come back to the mainland to swim or relax on the beach, not in Ha Long Bay. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6. The sunrise there is unforgettable. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | |

Task 2. Read the passage again and answer the questions.

1. How long does it take to travel from Ha Noi to Ha Long Bay by bus?

2. When was Ha Long Bay recognized by UNESCO as a World Heritage Site?

3. What makes the islands in Ha Long Bay marvelous?

4. According to the passage, is there the best time to visit Ha Long Bay? Why or why not?

5. What are the things that you must do there?

6. What impression do you get after a visit to Ha Long Bay?

IX. Write complete sentences about Tam Coc - Bich Dong in Ninh Binh province, using the words/phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

1. Tam Coc - Bich Dong/ belong/ Trang An Scenic Landscape Complex/ well known/ poetic/ and/ inspirational natural scenery.

2. It/ second nicest cavern/ Viet Nam/ Huong rich Cavern.

3. Bich Dong Pagoda/ built/ Le Dynasty/ Bich Dong Cavern/ name/ mean/ "Green Pearl Cavern".

4. Tam Coc Cavern/ consist/ Ca cave, Hai cave and Ba cave/ all/ offer/ beauty and mystery/ tourists.

5. Visit/ Tam Coc Cavern/ tourists/ feel/ get/ lost/ such/ hidden fairy site.

6. In brief/ it/ ideal ecological spot/ lovers/ nature

TEST 3 UNIT 5

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. a. <u>l</u> imestone | b. <u>p</u> ilgrim | c. <u>r</u> ickshaw | d. <u>c</u> itadel |
| 2. a. <u>g</u> eological | b. <u>i</u> mage | c. <u>a</u> gency | d. <u>t</u> ogether |
| 3. a. <u>w</u> onder | b. <u>c</u> omplex | c. <u>b</u> ackdrop | d. <u>p</u> roper |
| 4. a. <u>h</u> istoric | b. <u>p</u> icturesque | c. <u>e</u> nter | d. <u>s</u> entence |
| 5. a. <u>p</u> lumber | b. <u>s</u> culpture | c. <u>m</u> ea <u>s</u> ure | d. <u>s</u> tr <u>u</u> cture |

II. Choose the word that has the main stress placed differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. a. particular | b. spectacular | c. remarkable | d. picturesque |
| 2. a. structure | b. commune | c. cavern | d. cement |
| 3. a. museum | b. monument | c. cathedral | d. contestant |
| 4. a. contest | b. fortress | c. astounding | d. setting |
| 5. a. religious | b. situate | c. calendar | d. literature |

III. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

1. The limestone formation of Thien Duong Cave is more _____ than that of Phong Nha Cave.
a. spectacular b. probable c. geological d. sight-seeing
2. During Perfume Pagoda festival, a large number of _____ flock to the pagoda to pray for happiness and prosperity in the coming year.
a. spectators b. passengers c. pilgrims d. travellers
3. In the 17th century, the Viet people _____ the temple tower, calling it Thien Y Thanh Mau Tower.
a. put on b. looked for c. got into d. took over
4. The police caught the thief _____ the corner of Cascade and Plum Streets.
a. under b. at c. on d. in
5. He suggests _____ that they should adopt a different way of bringing up their children.
a. parents b. for parents c. toward parents d. to parents
6. If there is a mechanical problem, we suggest _____ the manufacturer directly.
a. contact b. to contact c. contacting d. to contacting
7. It is _____ that the best time to visit Hanoi is September.
a. believed b. worth c. rumored d. wondered
8. It _____ that Po Nagar Cham Towers were built in the 8th century.
a. considered b. was considered c. has considered d. considers
9. I suggest you _____ Ha Long Bay. It's very picturesque.
a. to visit b. visiting c. visited d. should visit
10. A: You really must go to Hoi An to enjoy the full moon at Mid-autumn Festival.
B: _____.
a. Yes, that's what I've heard. b. Do you really know about it?
c. Yes, I won't go there. d. No, thank you.

IV. Supply the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. You can't expect _____ (preserve) the man-made wonders without taking action.
2. She's a good manager because she never avoids _____ (deal) with the problems of her staff.
3. Would you mind _____ (tell) me about the French Gothic architecture?
4. I imagine _____ (go) back to the 20th century and _____ (witness) the construction of Cu Chi Tunnels.
5. We recommend _____ (book) early, as this is a popular event.
6. Youngsters nowadays seem _____ (lack) awareness of protecting the public places.
7. A lot of small towns in the area are definitely worth _____ (visit).
8. E-mail allows us _____ (send) messages all around the world quickly and easily.
9. I suggested _____ (put) the matter of restoring Ben Thanh Market to the committee.
10. On the way to Hue, we stopped _____ (pay) a visit to a relative in Da Nang.

V. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. Too many office buildings _____ (build) in the city over the last ten years.
2. It _____ (report) that many buildings had been damaged by the fire.
3. I suggested to Mike that we _____ (go) out for a meal with his colleagues.
4. Mary wishes she _____ (take) part in the festival at Perfume Pagoda.
5. It _____ (expect) that we will have more than a dozen guests this evening.
6. Acupuncture _____ (discover) by the Chinese thousands of years ago.
7. He said he _____ (see) my family the following day.
8. If I won a lot of money, I _____ (buy) a big house in Dalat.
9. At 6 o'clock this morning, we _____ (travel) to the airport.
10. Imagine yourself _____ (sit) in the pine forest, listening to the sound of the nature.

VI. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. There is a growing _____ that Vietnam creates its own identity with numerous natural

wonders. (recognize)

2. We spent years learning about the complex _____ structure of the region. (geology)
3. It was a pretty town with a _____ harbor and well-preserved buildings. (picture)
4. Beijing announced that it would speed up construction of a subsidiary _____ center. (administrate)
5. She had once been a _____ in the Miss World competition. (contest)
6. The snow-capped summit, 2,642 meters high, offers _____ views. (astound)
7. _____ education is compulsory in all English schools. (religion)
8. The rockets are a purely _____ measure against nuclear attack. (defense)
9. Oxford attracts large numbers of _____. (sightsee)
10. A mountain in the Rockies became the _____ for a film about Everest. (locate)

VII. Choose the correct answers to complete the passage.

Ha Long Bay is a UNESCO World Heritage Site and popular travel (1)_____ in Quang Ninh Province, Vietnam. The bay features thousands of limestone karsts and isles in (2)_____ shapes and sizes. Ha Long Bay is a center of a larger zone which (3)_____ Bai Tu Long Bay to the northeast, and Cat Ba Island to the southwest.

Ha Long Bay has an area of around 1,553km², including 1,960 - 2,000 islets, most of (4)_____ are limestone. The core of the bay has an area of 334km² with a high density of 775 islets. The limestone in this bay has gone through 500 million years of (5)_____ in different conditions and environments. The evolution of the karst in this bay has taken 20 million years (6)_____ the impact of the tropical wet climate. The geo-diversity of the environment in the area has created (7)_____, including a tropical evergreen biosystem, oceanic and sea shore biosystem. Ha Long Bay is (8)_____ to 14 endemic floral species and 60 endemic faunal species.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. situation | b. destination | c. direction | d. ground |
| 2. a. various | b. complex | c. exciting | d. original |
| 3. a. offers | b. includes | c. consists | d. covers |
| 4. a. them | b. those | c. which | d. whom |
| 5. a. formation | b. foundation | c. establishment | d. contribution |
| 6. a. in | b. of | c. for | d. under |
| 7. a. biochemical | b. biodiversity | c. bioconversion | d. biodefense |
| 8. a. way | b. place | c. home | d. house |

VIII. Read the text carefully, then do the tasks.

Located in Duy Xuyen district, Quang Nam province, about 69km from Da Nang City and 20km from Tra Kieu ancient capital, My Son Sanctuary is the complex of numerous Champa tower-temples in a valley roughly two kilometers wide, surrounded by two mountain ranges. This used to be a site of religious ceremony for kings of the ruling dynasties of Champa, as well as a burial place for Cham royalty and national heroes.

My Son Sanctuary is regarded as one of the main religious centers of Hinduism in Southeast Asia and is the foremost heritage site of this nature in Vietnam. Notably, among 225 Cham vestiges that are founded in Vietnam, My Son possesses 71 monuments and 32 epitaphs, the content of which is still being studied. My Son Sanctuary is often compared with other historical temple complexes in Southeast Asia, such as Borobudur of Java in Indonesia, Angkor Wat in Cambodia, Bagan of Myanmar or Ayutthaya in Thailand.

My Son Sanctuary was honored as one of the UNESCO World Heritage Sites at the 23rd session of the World Heritage Committee in 1999. Based on architectural remains, My Son perhaps began construction in 4th century. It is perhaps the longest inhabited archaeological site in Indochina. Although time and wars have turned numerous tower-temples into ruins, sculptural artifacts and architectural remains still reflected golden age of Cham fine arts history. These masterpieces have marked flourishing periods of Champa culture and architecture as well as in Southeast Asia.

A. Decide whether the following sentences are true (T) or false (F).

1. My Son Sanctuary dates from the 4th century.
2. My Son Sanctuary is located in a valley surrounded by mountains.

- It can be seen that My Son Sanctuary is a centre of culture and politics of Champa Kingdom at the present time.
- My Son Sanctuary can't be compared to Angkor Wat, Bagan, and Borobudur.
- Some tower-temples of the My Son Sanctuary were destroyed by wars and time.
- My Son sanctuary is still considered as one of the most excellent achievement of the art of sculptures and architecture in Champa Kingdom.

B. Answer the following questions.

- How far is it from Da Nang to My Son Sanctuary?

- What did My Son use to be?

- How many Cham vestiges are there in My Son?

- When was My Son recognized as a World Heritage Site by UNESCO?

IX. Complete the passage with words from the box.

unknown

measurements

formations

capacity

attempt

regarded

twice

wonders

With (1)_____ of over 200 meters (656 feet) wide and 150 meters (492 feet) high as well as a length of 9 kilometers (5.6 miles), Son Doong Cave is the largest cave in the world.

Before 2009, Malaysia's Deer Cave was (2)_____ as the largest cave in the world until a group of scientists from the British Cave Research Association explored and studied the Son Doong Cave finding it was in fact over (3)_____ the size of Deer Cave.

Named by BBC News, the "most beautiful cave on the globe" makes this one of the great natural (4)_____ of Asia. It is a mountain river cave featuring a fast flowing subterranean river. Son Doong Cave is mostly comprised of limestone that has over time shaped into some of the tallest stalagmite (5)_____ in the world. Within Son Doong Cave visitors will find it is so big that it contains its own jungle and river and has the (6)_____ to be able to fit a 40-story skyscraper inside. The source of the river still remains (7)_____ to this day with future plans of the British Cave Research Association to return soon and (8)_____ to solve the many mysteries this cave holds.

X. Read the text carefully, then choose the correct answers.

After only 50 minute flying from Ho Chi Minh City, you will set foot on the tropical paradise of Vietnam and the world: Phu Quoc Island.

The island has a roughly triangular shape with a north-south length of 50km and a west-east width of 25km. A great part of the terrain is filled with beautiful sandy beaches, but there is a mountainous region with 99 peaks, among which the Peak of Chua Mountain is the tallest one at 603 meters. Due to Phu Quoc's location in the Gulf of Thailand, its climate is sub-equatorial with a temperate weather all year round, making trips to Phu Quoc possible any time in the year. However, the best time to travel to this island is during the dry season, from November until March, when the sky is blue and clear and the rains are away.

Phu Quoc is most famous for its the cuisines and a natural wonderful coastline. The most famous food of Phu Quoc is fish sauce, which has become quite popular all over Vietnam and the world. Besides, another thing worth trying there is the spicy yet interesting black pepper. However, the factor that will definitely intrigue you to visit Phu Quoc is its untouched coastline featuring several heavenly beaches. They have yet to be explored to their full ability, but this fact might be actually positive as it gives the shores a romantic beauty that you can find in nowhere else in the world.

- What is Phu Quoc Island regarded as?

a. Pearl of the Orient

b. Tropical Paradise

c. City of Eternal Spring

d. Lanterns Paradise

- According to the passage, Phu Quoc Island _____.

- a. has both beaches and mountains
 - b. doesn't have much tourist attraction
 - c. has the tallest mountain in Vietnam
 - d. doesn't have rains all the year round
3. Tourists can visit Phu Quoc anytime in the year thanks to _____.
- a. its location by the sea
 - b. its friendly local people
 - c. its temperate climate
 - d. its dry season
4. What are Phu Quoc's specialities?
- a. red pepper and fish sauce
 - b. black pepper and dried fish
 - c. red pepper and soya sauce
 - d. spicy black pepper and fish sauce
5. The word "intrigue" has the closest meaning to _____.
- a. attract
 - b. promote
 - c. inspire
 - d. pay attention to
6. Which of the following statements is NOT true?
- a. Phu Quoc Island is located in the Gulf of Thailand.
 - b. The beaches in Phu Quoc Island have been explored to their full potentials.
 - c. Phu Quoc's dry season begins from November and lasts through March.
 - d. The island is roughly triangular in shape.

XI. Write sentences using *suggest + V-ing* or *suggest + clause with should*.

1. I/ suggest/ take a course/ photography.

2. I/ suggest/ the government/ pass/ law on banning deforestation.

3. We/ suggest/ students from universities/ participate more/ social work.

4. My classmates/ suggest/ use bus and bicycle/ go to school.

5. His father/ suggested/ he/ read more books/ environmental issues.

6. They/ suggest/ teachers/ provide students/ knowledge on historical facts.

7. People/ suggest/ exhaust fumes from vehicles/ reduce.

8. My mom/ suggested/ keep the surroundings/ clean and green.

9. I/ suggest/ visitors/ stop littering/ Phong Nha Cave.

10. My friends/ suggest/ visit/ the Royal Citadel/ when being in Hue.

XII. Rewrite the following sentence using the impersonal passive.

1. They expect more than two million Muslim pilgrims from all over the world head to Mecca this year.
It _____
2. People believe that many more people will die of skin cancer over the next ten years.
It _____
3. People are thinking that drugs are very dangerous.
It _____
4. People have reported that Bitexco Tower is the tallest skyscraper in Vietnam.
It _____
5. They think that the first temple existed during the reign of Le Thanh Tong in the 15th century.
It _____
6. People know that Phong Nha Cave was found in the 16th century by Cham people.
It _____
7. People claim that the site of the Perfume Pagoda was discovered over 2000 years ago.
It _____

8. They said that the government was conducting a project to investigate the harmful effects of air pollution.
It _____
9. They thought that he went to a local restaurant with his girlfriend.
It _____
10. They have suggested that bright children should take their exams early.
It _____

XIII. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.

1. He is carrying out a research on how people spend their money for clothes.
→ A research _____
2. Although I had all the necessary qualifications, they didn't offer me the job.
→ Despite _____
3. "Please do not litter as you are walking along the coast", the guard said to us.
→ The guard told _____
4. I haven't bought any clothes since my trip to Hanoi.
→ The last time _____
5. They think that a garden would be a perfect setting for the house.
→ It _____
6. Jack's parents made him study a lot for the entrance exam to high school.
→ Jack was _____
7. You can't register for a course abroad if you don't have a passport.
→ Unless _____
8. "Why don't we visit the Royal Citadel first?" Quang said.
→ Quang suggested that _____
9. People expect that he will join the company soon.
→ He _____
10. Shall we use Perfume Pagoda as a theme of the presentation?
→ She suggests _____

XIV. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word in capital.

1. They consider Sara is one of the best students in her school. (BE)
Sara _____
2. It's pity she doesn't share memories of her trip with me. (WISH)
I _____
3. Emily has to work part-time on Saturday, so she can't accompany her best friend to the contest. (COULD)
If _____
4. Shall we surf the net for the location of Ninh Binh Province? (SUGGEST)
I _____
5. Someone is going to redecorate the kitchen for us next month. (HAVE)
We _____
6. People hope that cable cars construction to Son Doong Cave will be stopped. (IS)
It _____
7. "When are you going to submit your research paper?" my teacher asked me. (WAS)
My teacher _____
8. When you come inside you should remove your coat and hat. (TAKE)
When _____
9. When will you book the flight for your trip to Vietnam? (BE)
When _____
10. I'm interested in the news about ancient towns. (FIND)
I _____

UNIT 6: VIET NAM: THEN AND NOW

A. VOCABULARY

1. annoyed (adj)	/ə'noɪd/:	bực mình, khó chịu
2. astonished (adj)	/ə'stɒnɪʃt/:	kinh ngạc
3. boom (n)	/bu:m/:	bùng nổ
4. compartment (n)	/kəm'pɑ:tmənt/:	toa xe
5. clanging (adj)	/klæŋŋ/:	tiếng leng keng
6. cooperative (adj)	/kəʊ'ɒpərətɪv/:	hợp tác
7. elevated walkway (n)	/'elɪveɪtɪd 'wɔ:kweɪ/:	lối đi dành cho người đi bộ
8. exporter (n)	/ek'spɔ:tə(r)/:	nước xuất khẩu, người xuất khẩu
9. extended family (n)	/'ɪk'stendɪd 'fæməli/:	gia đình nhiều thế hệ cùng sống chung
10. flyover (n)	/'flaɪəʊvə(r)/:	cầu vượt (cho xe máy, ô tô)
11. manual (adj)	/'mænjʊəl/:	làm (gì đó) bằng tay
12. mushroom (v)	/'mʌʃrʊm/:	mọc lên như nấm
13. noticeable (adj)	/'nəʊtɪsəbl/:	gây chú ý, đáng chú ý
14. nuclear family (n)	/'nju:kliə(r) 'fæməli/:	gia đình hạt nhân
15. photo exhibition (n)	/'fəʊtəʊ ,eksɪ'bjʃn/:	triển lãm ảnh
16. pedestrian (n)	/'pɛdɪstriən/:	người đi bộ
17. roof (n)	/'ru:f/:	mái nhà
18. rubber (n)	/'rʌbə(r)/:	cao su
19. sandals (n)	/'sændlɪz/:	dép
20. thatched house (n)	/θætʃt haʊs/:	nhà tranh mái lá
21. tiled (adj)	/'taɪld/:	lợp ngói, bằng ngói
22. tram (n)	/'træm/:	xe điện, tàu điện
23. trench (n)	/'trentʃ/:	hào giao thông
24. tunnel (n)	/'tʌnl/:	đường hầm, cống ngầm
25. underpass (n)	/'ʌndəpɑ:s/:	đường hầm cho người đi bộ qua đường

B. GRAMMAR

1. ÔN TẬP THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH (PAST PERFECT)

Cấu trúc	(+) S + had + VpII (past participle) (-) S + had not / hadn't + VpII (?) Had + S + VpII? Yes, S + had / No, S + hadn't.
Ví dụ	(+) I had left when they came. (<i>Khi họ đến thì tôi đã rời đi rồi</i>). (-) I hadn't left when they came. (<i>Khi họ đến thì tôi đã không rời đi</i>). (?) Had you left when they came? (<i>Khi họ đến, bạn đã rời đi rồi à?</i>) Had you not left when they came? (<i>Khi họ đến, bạn đã không rời đi à?</i>) Hadn't you left when they came? (<i>Khi họ đến, bạn đã không rời đi à?</i>)
Cách dùng	- Diễn tả một hành động đã được hoàn tất trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ. Ví dụ: He had left the house before she came. - Diễn tả một hành động đã được hoàn tất trước một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ. Ví dụ: We had had lunch by two o'clock yesterday. By the age of 25, he had written two famous novels.
Dấu hiệu nhận biết	By + thời gian trong quá khứ Before, after, by the time, as soon as, as.....

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc ở thời quá khứ hoàn thành.

1. Before hanging out with friends, Jim (do) _____ his homework.
2. Peter told me that he (already finish) _____ reading 'Harry Potter'.
3. Mary said she (never be) _____ to Paris before.
4. When we came to the movie theater, the film (start) _____.
5. Where _____ (Jim / be) before you found him?
6. Peter (travel) _____ to 5 foreign countries on business trips before he retired.
7. My mother (write) _____ me a note before she left for work.
8. I wish I (not attend) _____ that meeting.
9. Jim (read) _____ all his books before he brought a new one yesterday.
10. _____ (you / clean) your room before you went out?

Bài 2: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc ở thì quá khứ hoàn thành hoặc quá khứ đơn.

1. Mr. Brown (come) _____ home as soon as he (finish) _____ his work.
2. I (live) _____ in Texas for 4 years before I (move) _____ to California.
3. When Mr. Smith (wake) _____ yesterday morning, breakfast (already be) _____ ready.
4. Before I (get) _____ promotion, I (work) _____ very hard.
5. Yesterday, my mother (pick) _____ me up from school before we (go) _____ shopping together.
6. Our grandparents (tell) _____ us that he (serve) _____ in the army in 1945.
7. After having dinner with my boyfriend, I (go) _____ home.
8. Yesterday (be) _____ the first time Jane (perform) _____ in front of such large audience.
9. Peter (admit) _____ he (break) _____ my favorite vase the day before.
10. What _____ (you / do) before you (come) _____ there?
11. Yesterday I (feel) _____ nervous as I (not prepare) _____ my presentation carefully.
12. _____ (Peter / come) to see you after he (finish) _____ his work?
13. Mary (prepare) _____ the meal before she (invite) _____ her new neighbor to have lunch with her.
14. Before I (buy) _____ a car, I (travel) _____ by bus for nearly 5 years.
15. As soon as Jane (see) _____ Jim, she (storm) _____ out of the room.

Bài 3: Dựa vào các từ cho sẵn, hãy viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. Before / Peter / go / university /, / he / take / gap / year.

2. Where / you / be / before / you / come / home.

3. There / be / many / trees / along / street / before / people / cut / them / down.

4. Jim / be / very / upset / before / Mary / cheer / him / up.

5. She / tell / me / yesterday / she / not / finish / her / assignment / yet.

6. What / happen / after / Jim / propose / to / Jane?

7. You / eat / dinner / before / you / come / here?

8. Peter / travel / a lot / before / his leg / seriously / injure / in / accident.

Bài 4: Hoàn thành các câu sau bằng dạng đúng của các động từ cho sẵn.

Commute	Be	(Not) build	Suffer	Do
Evacuate	Cooperate	Try	Mushroom	Want

1. In the past, people _____ by tram before it was replaced by other modern means of transport.
2. Our family _____ from poverty before we received help from the local people.
3. There _____ only a slight increase in the amount of money we earned each month after I changed my job.
4. The service industry in our region _____ before the recession.
5. They _____ any flyovers in our area before 2014.
6. Mary and Jane _____ closely in the project before they hated each other.
7. What _____ (people) to earn a living before they worked in that factory?
8. They _____ several times before they gave up on their dream.
9. The local authorities _____ people from the dangerous area before the flood came.
10. I (always) _____ to become a superman before I realized that superman wasn't real.

B. CẤU TRÚC TÍNH TỪ

1. Cấu trúc tính từ đi cùng với động từ nguyên thể có 'to' (Adjective + to – infinitive)

Cấu trúc 1

Cách dùng	Cấu trúc tính từ + động từ nguyên thể có to có ý nghĩa “thật là thế nào để làm gì” hoặc “thật như thế nào để ai đó làm gì”, dùng để nhấn mạnh thông tin
Cấu trúc	It + be + adj + (for O) + to V
Ví dụ	It's hard to believe that she failed the exam. (<i>Thật khó để tin rằng cô ấy bị trượt kì thi</i>). It was easy for her to pass the exam. (<i>Thật dễ dàng để cô ấy đỗ kì thi</i>) It is boring to go to the meeting. (<i>Đi đến buổi họp thì thật là nhàm chán</i>) It was dangerous for Harry to drive fast. (<i>Thật là nguy hiểm khi Harry lái xe nhanh</i>) It's interesting to talk to you. (<i>Nói chuyện với bạn thật là thú vị</i>) It's difficult to learn Japanese. (<i>Học tiếng Nhật thì rất khó</i>)

Cấu trúc 2

Cách dùng	Cấu trúc tính từ + động từ nguyên thể có to còn được dùng để diễn tả phản ứng, cảm xúc, sự tự tin hay sự lo lắng.
Cấu trúc	S + be + adj + to V
Các tính từ thông dụng	Happy (vui), glad (vui), pleased (hài lòng), relieved (nhẹ nhõm), sorry (tiếc), certain (chắc chắn), sure (chắc chắn), confident (tự tin), convinced (tin chắc), afraid (sợ), annoyed (hơi giận), astonished (ngạc nhiên), aware (nhận biết, nhận thấy), conscious (tỉnh, có ý thức, biết được)...
Ví dụ	Tom was surprised to see you. (<i>Tôm ngạc nhiên khi thấy bạn</i>) He's afraid to stay alone at night. (<i>Anh ấy sợ ở nhà một mình vào ban đêm</i>) I'm very pleased to see you here. (<i>Tôi rất vui mừng khi được gặp anh ở đây</i>) I was sorry to hear that your father is ill. (<i>Tôi lấy làm tiếc khi nghe rằng cha của anh bị ốm</i>)

2. Cấu trúc tính từ đi cùng với mệnh đề danh từ (Adjective + that – clause)

Cách dùng	Cấu trúc tính từ + mệnh đề danh từ được dùng để diễn tả cảm xúc, sự tin tưởng hay sự lo lắng.... Mệnh đề danh từ được cấu tạo bởi 'that + mệnh đề'
Cấu trúc	S + be + adj + that + S + V

Các tính từ thông dụng	Chi cảm xúc: Happy (vui), glad (vui), delighted (vui mừng), pleased (hài lòng), relieved (nhẹ nhõm), sorry (tiếc), surprising (ngạc nhiên...) Chi sự tin tưởng hay lo lắng: certain (chắc chắn), sure (chắc chắn), confident (tự tin), convinced (tin chắc), afraid (sợ), annoyed (hơi giận), astonished (ngạc nhiên), aware (nhận biết, nhận thấy), conscious (tỉnh, có ý thức, biết được)...
Ví dụ	I am delighted that you passed your exam (<i>Tôi rất vui vì anh đã vượt qua kì thi</i>) It was quite surprising that he passed the examination. (<i>Thật đáng ngạc nhiên là anh ấy đã thi đậu</i>) I am afraid that I can't accept this assignment. (<i>Tôi e rằng tôi không thể nhận nhiệm vụ này</i>)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 5: Dựa vào những từ cho trước viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. It / hard / Jim / do / this / task.

2. It / not / easy / me / pass / the / test.

3. It / challenging / you / change / your / job / now.

4. Mary / always / afraid / try / anything / new.

5. You / confident / win / the / competition?

6. My mother / pleased / see / me / at / home / now.

7. I / sorry / to / hear / that / you / have / accident / last week.

8. I / glad / you / come / to / my party.

9. It / not / surprising / Peter / be / best / student / in / his / class.

10. I / convinced / Peter / be / right.

Bài 6: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong câu và sửa lại cho đúng.

1. I sure that you have mistaken my pen for yours.

2. Peter is not confident presenting his ideas to the class.

3. It is impossible that a fish to climb a tree.

4. Is it possible for me winning this competition?

5. Mr. Brown was relieved hearing his wife was not injured in the accident.

6. Are you certain that he to be the pickpocket?

7. Peter astonished that he accidentally found his childhood toy.

8. It is difficult for you pass the test if you don't study hard.

9. Were they be able to swim across that river?

10. They don't aware that staying up late is bad for health.

Bài 7: Sắp xếp các từ đã cho thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. that / I / thankful / me / so / homework / with / my / you / am / help.

2. difficult / It / English / has / learn / very / to / for / me / been.

3. museum / me / the / it's / to / interesting / go / to / for.

4. Peter / yesterday / was / party / his / to / came / glad / birthday / that / his / classmates.

5. boring / to / very / attend / be / that / must / It / meeting.

6. It's / week / Jim / next / will / hard / house / his / to / move / believe / that.

7. dangerous / play / It's / for / to / children / knife / with.

8. sure / he / my / stolen / I / that / am / has / bike.

Bài 8: Viết lại câu sao cho nghĩa không thay đổi.

1. Learning English is no difficult for me.

→ It is _____

2. Jim was very confident when he said that he was the best.

→ Jim was very confident to _____

3. Peter received a letter from his foreign friend yesterday. He was very happy about it.

→ Peter was very happy to _____

4. I can't come to your party this weekend. I'm afraid.

→ I am afraid _____

5. Doing gardening is not as easy as it looks.

→ It is not _____

6. I had no difficulty in making the last decision.

→ It was not _____

7. I think Peter is very happy. He has won a lottery.

→ I think Peter is very happy that _____

8. You were so lucky. You ran into a famous singer

→ You were so lucky to _____

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 9: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

1. By the age of 25, Mr. Brown (own) _____ a large house and two expensive cars.

2. I (expect) _____ that Mary would come before she (tell) _____ me that she couldn't afford time.

3. It (be) _____ very difficult for me (carry) _____ this project because my professor (give) _____ some advice.

4. Yesterday, my mom (be) _____ very angry (find) _____ out that I (not do) _____ the laundry yet.

5. _____ (you / stay) in your room before your mother (find) _____ you?

6. By the time we (arrive) _____ at the station, the train (already leave) _____ for 15 minutes.

7. When Jim (come) _____ home, he (be) _____ angry (realize) _____ that someone (break) _____ into his house.

8. _____ (it / be) hard for you (understand) _____ the lesson yesterday?

9. As soon as the teacher (walk) _____ into the classroom, she (be) _____ surprised that her students (prepare) _____ a birthday present for her.

10. _____ (you / be) confident that you would win the competition?

Bài 10: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh

1. By / the / time / Peter / everyone / already / leave.

2. They / really / enjoy / themselves / at / party / before / they / have / go / home.

3. It / be / boring / me / learn / Japanese / before / I / have / new / teacher.

4. Yesterday / it / surprising / that / my sister / cook / dinner / before / I / come / home.

5. I / annoyed / that / my brother / not / clean / the house / before / he / go / out.

6. You / happy / know / that / your mother / give / you / a special / gift / yesterday?

7. Peter / disappointed / know / his / final scores.

8. It / difficult / me / accept / the fact / that / I / not / get / that / job.

Bài 11: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng

It is not difficult (1)_____ to imagine how life used to be in the past. My grandfather (2)_____ keen on telling me about people and things of his generation before he (3)_____ away. According to what he said, life in the Vietnamese traditional village was very peaceful, (4)_____ it was exciting. People often lived very closely to others and they formed a neat society. Although there weren't any convenient means of communication such as telephone or email, people still kept in touch and interacted with each other. They were very happy (5)_____ their stories with their family and neighbors. Sometimes, they even (6)_____ their neighbors as relatives and always supported others. It was very common in those days (7)_____ villages to gather up in the communal house to watch TV or listen to radio together because there was often only one or two TV in a small village. My grandfather said that he preferred life in the past (8)_____ the modern life since people were friendlier and more caring.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. for me | B. for my | C. to me | D. that I |
| 2. A. has always been | B. had always been | C. was always | D. is always |
| 3. A. has passed | B. had passed | C. passed | D. passes |
| 4. A. when | B. although | C. yet | D. instead |
| 5. A. shared | B. sharing | C. shares | D. to share |
| 6. A. called | B. regarded | C. made | D. turned |
| 7. A. to | B. on | C. for | D. that |
| 8. A. to | B. on | C. than | D. that |

Bài 12: Đọc đoạn văn sau và trả lời câu hỏi.

Polyester is now being used for bottles. ICI, the chemicals and plastics company, believes that it is now beginning to break the grip of glass on the bottle business and thus take advantage of this huge market.

All the plastics manufacturers have been experiencing hard times as their traditional products have been doing badly world-wide for the last few years. Between 1982 and 1984 the Plastics Division of ICI had lost a hundred and twenty million dollars, and they felt that the most hopeful new market was in packaging, bottles and cans.

Since 1982 it has opened three new factories producing "Melinar", the raw material from which high quality polyester bottles are made.

The polyester bottle was born in the 1970s, when soft drinks companies like Coca Cola started selling their drinks in giant two-litre containers. Because of the build-up of the pressure of gas in these large containers, glass was unsuitable. Nor was PVC, the plastic which had been used for bottles since the 1960s, suitable for drinks with gas in them. A new plastic had to be made.

Glass is still cheaper for the smaller bottles, and will continue to be so unless oil and plastic become much cheaper, but plastic does well for the larger sizes.

Polyester bottles are virtually unbreakable. The manufacturers claim they are also lighter, less noisy when being handled, and can be re-used. Shopkeepers and other business people are unlikely to object to a change from glass to polyester, since these bottles mean few breakages, which are costly and time-consuming. The public, though, have been more difficult to persuade. ICI's commercial department are developing different bottles with interesting shapes to try to make them visually more attractive to the public.

The next step could be to develop a plastic which could replace tins for food. The problem here is the high temperatures necessary for cooking the food in the container.

1. Plastics of various kinds have been used for making bottles
 - A. since 1982
 - B. since the 1970s but only for large bottles
 - C. since the 1960s but not for liquids with gas in them
 - D. since companies like Coca Cola first tried them.
2. Why was ICI's Plastics Division interested in polyester for bottles?
 - A. The other things they make are not selling well.
 - B. Glass manufacturers cannot make enough new bottles.
 - C. They have factories which could be adapted to make it.
 - D. The price of oil keeps changing.
3. Why aren't all bottles now made of polyester?
 - A. The price of oil and plastic has risen
 - B. It is not suitable for containing gassy drinks
 - C. The public like traditional glass bottles
 - D. Shop keepers dislike re-useable bottles.
4. Manufacturers think polyester bottles are better than glass bottles because they _____.
 - A. Are cheaper
 - B. are more suited to small sizes
 - C. are more exciting to look at
 - D. do not break easily
5. Plastic containers for holding food in the same way as cans
 - A. have been used for many years
 - B. are an idea that interests the plastics companies
 - C. are possible, but only for hot food
 - D. are the first things being made in the new factories

C.EXERCISES

TEST 1 (UNIT 6)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A.sandals B.compartment C.tram D.manual
2. A.trench B.pedestrian C.exhibition D.tunnel
3. A.exhibition B.exist C.example D.examination

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

4. A.significant B.facility C.elevated D.initially
5. A.cooperative B.considerable C.illiteracy D.anniversary

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. In a traditional family, there were three _____: grandparents, parents, and children.
 - A.groups
 - B.teams
 - C.bands
 - D.generations
7. It was very _____ that a couple in the past could have about 5 to 10 children.
 - A.popular
 - B.common
 - C.shared
 - D.obvious
8. Along with our need for love, our most important need is the need for _____.
 - A.appreciation
 - B.value
 - C.importance
 - D.increase
9. The metro will _____ Ben Thanh Market in the central area to the amusement park at Suoi Tien in District 9.
 - A.join
 - B.contact
 - C.connect
 - D.relate
10. Ho Chi Minh City plans to use the state budget funds to build ten more flyover _____.
 - A.systems
 - B.sets
 - C.methods
 - D.routes
11. It is not _____ for men to wear the traditional costumes in modern life.
 - A.certain
 - B.surprised
 - C.pleased
 - D.convenient
12. It is not _____ for a particular vehicle to exist, to be loved for generations.
 - A.fun
 - B.glad
 - C.relieved
 - D. easy
13. Used throughout the 19th century in _____ classrooms, the slate has been used for students to write the answers to the problems.
 - A.most of
 - B.almost
 - C.nearly all
 - D.hardly ever
14. The sound of firecracker was common on previous Tet, but it is now prohibited _____ being dangerous and unsafe in production and distribution.
 - A.because
 - B.due to
 - C.despite
 - D.for

15. They _____ a five-day tour in Malaysia before they enjoyed the Tet festival last year.

A.spend

B.spent

C.had spent

D.would spend

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

thickness

souvenirs

fashion

interest

foreigners

demand

footwear

soldiers

At the age of 73, the retired shoemaker Pham Quang Xuan says he never thought his tailor-made rubber sandals would still be popular in modern times. The sandals, made from old car tyres, were worn by many Vietnamese (16) _____ during the war against the French and the Americans. Mr. Xuan and his friends once made and sold rubber sandals in Hang Bot Street, but (17) _____ dropped as they slowly went out of (18) _____. Several years ago, he started re-making the sandals for friends and family members and, in doing so, helped revive a wartime (19) _____. Despite his age, he still spends several hours a day carving sandals from rubber of suitable (20) _____, then cutting and trimming the edges and soles. The sandals come in either with diagonal or horizontal straps.

V. Combine the following sentences by completing the second.

21. Family members care for each other. It is essential for that.

It is essential _____

22. Families are the place where we learn values, skills, and behavior. We are aware of that.

We are aware _____

23. Parents should guide their children into the world outside the home. It is certain about that.

It is certain _____

24. Strong families have a sense of loyalty and devotion toward family members. We are conscious of that.

We are conscious _____

25. The family is a place of shelter for individual family members. It is sure about that.

It is sure _____

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

During the war, children wore straw hats to (26) _____ themselves from debris. Houses and schools were bombed and destroyed. Many children were made (27) _____ and their schools had to be moved around or lessons sometimes had to (28) _____ after dark to avoid being targeted by heavy bombing. Many schools had its roof (29) _____ with several layers of straw to withstand the (30) _____ of the bombs. Life for children was very hard in both the North and South of Viet Nam during the war.

Young people were (31) _____ of their duty to serve their country. Even young girls took part in the war efforts by digging bomb shelters. Children took first-aid courses after school so that they could (32) _____ injured people.

Childhood years of children born in the 1960s are (33) _____. As innocent children, they went to school (34) _____ straw hats in the sounds of American jet fighters in the sky and the shots from Vietnamese anti-aircraft guns.

Nowadays, they are proud that they came through those hardships. They had their heads held (35) _____ walking out of the war.

26. A. save

B. keep

C. protect

D. help

27. A. homemade

B. homeless

C. homelessness

D. homesick

28. A. place

B. take place

C. be happened

D. exist

29. A. cover

B. covering

C. covered

D. being covered

30. A. reasons

B. causes

C. actions

D. impacts

31. A. known

B. afraid

C. capable

D. aware

32. A. care for

B. take after

C. take care about

D. deal

33. A. unfortunate

B. unforgettable

C. forgettable

D. memorably

34. A. wear

B. to wear

C. wearing

D. that wear

35. A. high B. highly C. height D. above

VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Street Food Shoulder Poles on Saigon streets

Street food shoulder pole is familiar with Saigon people throughout many years. Nowadays it has become a special thing that makes travelers curious. In small areas of District 1 and District 3, we could count more than 100 vendors who earned money using shoulder poles. A shoulder pole, also called a carrying pole, is a **yoke** of wood or bamboo, used by people to carry a load. The vendors put their goods in two baskets from each end of the yoke.

In the downtown, we can meet young women with their shoulder poles. The baskets are covered with plastic wrap carefully to protect the foods from the street dust. In a tight space of one basket, she could mix the ingredients and bake the cake on a small charcoal which was defended by carton. The ready cakes were put in other basket.

In the morning or evening, on rainy or sunny day, Saigon streets are marked by shoulder poles of people from different regions of the country, which has become a unique part of Saigon. It has been said that it isn't hard to live in Saigon if you work hard. With the carrying pole on shoulders, the vendor has turned it into a "store". The reason is very simple, they don't have enough money to open a real store. Every day these women continue their journey through Saigon streets under the sun and the rain, selling cheap things or street foods to earn money and feed their children.

36. A shoulder pole _____.

- A. is a bar made of wood or bamboo B. used to be called a carrying pole
C. is the connection between wood and bamboo D. is used to put goods on street vendors' shoulders

37. Street food shoulder pole is _____.

- A. a way for passers-by to have food B. a characteristic of District 1 and 3
C. used to make foreign travelers curious D. used by street vendors to carry things

38. All of the following are true about shoulder poles EXCEPT that _____.

- A. street vendors can bake cakes there
B. they can contain enough things to serve some customers
C. the two baskets have the same function
D. they can be protected from dust

39. All of the following are benefits of shoulder poles EXCEPT that _____.

- A. they can help street vendors to sell many things without a store
B. women are marked by unique shoulder poles from different regions
C. it is a way for street vendors to carry goods around the streets
D. street vendors can support their families with the help of shoulder poles

40. The word "**yoke**" in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to _____.

- A. a long piece of wood that is fastened across the necks to pull heavy loads
B. a wooden bar that is connected to the vehicles or loads so that they can be pulled away
C. something that connects two things or people, usually in a way that limits freedom
D. a piece of wood that is shaped to fit across a person's shoulders to carry two equal loads

VIII. Write about the important qualities that a person needs to be able to get along with other members in an extended family. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

41. We/ have/ positive attitude/ other family members.

42. We/ treat/ other family members/ best friends.

43. It/ necessary/ you/ show/ love/ small ways/ every day.

44. We/ praise/ accomplishments/ and/ strengths/ other family members.

TEST 2 (UNIT 6)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. A.cooperative | B.noticeable | C.flyover | D.astonished |
| 2. A.mushroom | B.tunnel | C.manual | D.rubber |
| 3. A.exporter | B.examine | C.exchange | D.excellent |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 4. A.dramatic | B.confident | C.tolerant | D.interesting |
| 5. A.sympathetic | B.obedient | C.cooperate | D.pedestrian |

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. In the past several weeks, I have had the _____ to interact with a few large extended families.
A.event B.situation C.ceremony D.opportunity
7. Wise families accept the _____, and support those who have different ways of thinking.
A.differences B.similarities C.same D.agreements
8. As an old saying in Viet Nam, "Blood is thicker than water", the concept of blood _____ is always engraved in the mind of the Vietnamese.
A.relation B.relationship C.connection D.joint
9. Children feel _____ to go into the world with the support from their parents.
A.confident B.confidently C.confidence D.reluctant
10. The railway route is designed with double lanes, electrified and has technical standards which allow _____ of earthquake level 8.
A.ability B.power C.tolerance D.acceptance
11. As a member of family, you are _____ to receive moral support and material assistance from other members, especially when you are in trouble.
A.required B.forced C.astonished D.expected
12. At Station 3 at Ba Son shipyard, the metro line in Ho Chi Minh City _____ from underground to elevated.
A.gets rid of B.shifts C.moves D.transfers
13. For generations, bicycles have been used not only as transport but also as a way of _____ for working-class families.
A.life B.life-saving C.liveliness D.livelihood
14. When President Barack Obama arrived in Viet Nam in July 2016, the former US Presidents Bill Clinton and George W. Bush _____ here earlier.
A.come B.would come C.had come D.have come
15. In the old days, people _____ phrynium leaves before they made chung cakes
A.would collect B.had collected C.have gained D.had gained

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

<i>spirit</i>	<i>blossoms</i>	<i>flowers</i>	<i>respect</i>
<i>market</i>	<i>occasion</i>	<i>custom</i>	<i>habit</i>

Tet (Lunar New Year) activities have more or less changed over time, but beautiful traditional customs are followed today in every Vietnamese family. For the people, the Tet festival is the time when reality blends with dreams. It is not only a(n) (16) _____ for them to decorate houses and shop for more goods, but also a chance for family members to reunite and pay (17) _____ to their ancestors.

Some people have to cut spending due to the current economic difficulties, but none forgets the traditions that symbolise the (18) _____ of the nation during the holiday. Many young people still follow the traditional (19) _____ of boiling Chung cakes at home. Jam, cigarettes and

wine were essential items during Tet. Peach (20)_____are still bought by every Hanoian family for Tet.

V. Combine the following sentences by completing the second.

21.The family becomes a source of encouragement in times of personal success or defeat. We are conscious of that.

We are conscious _____

22.Each family needs its own special set of rules and guidelines It is sure about that.

It is sure _____

23.Love requires constant daily effort by each family member. We are convinced of that.

We are convinced _____

24.Laughing together builds up a family but laughing at each other divides a family. It is clear about that.

It is clear _____

25.Children are allowed to have a voice in decision making in the family. We are pleased about that.

We are pleased _____

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Seventy percent of people in Viet Nam live in rural areas. Most of these people (26)_____their living by caring for farm animals like pigs. Other common jobs are crop fanning and fishing. For many of these farmers and fishermen, animal and plant waste is still a problem.

Many women and children cook meals using traditional cooking fuels. They also spend many hours (27)_____wood and other materials to burn. This process takes time and also uses a lot of natural resources. Moreover, they suffer the same health (28)_____. Cooking was a difficult and dangerous job. The kitchen was smoky, and the black ash would make people cough, and (29)_____pain in the eyes.

But a biogas system can (30)_____all of these problems! It can turn animal or plant waste (31)_____valuable resources - such as cooking fuel, electricity and plant fertilizer. First, an expert must build a system of pipes and tanks. This biogas system contains and manages the decaying process of animal or plant waste. To use the biogas system, a farmer must move animal waste into a pipe with water. These pipes bring the waste to a tank (32)_____in the ground. This tank is called a bio-digester. Air cannot enter this tank. In this contained environment, natural bacteria decays the waste material. (33)_____the waste decays in the bio-digester, it (34)_____two things - biogas and slurry. The biogas rises to the top of the tank. The pressure from the gas pushes the liquid slurry into (35)_____. Now people can use both the biogas and the slurry.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 26.A.earn | B.look for | C.do | D.take |
| 27.A.collecting | B.looking | C.keeping | D.controlling |
| 28.A.businesses | B.importance | C.concerns | D.involvements |
| 29.A.bring | B.cause | C.make | D.hurt |
| 30.A.match | B.deal | C.solve | D.delete |
| 31.A.to | B.in | C.at | D.into |
| 32.A.bury | B.burying | C.being buried | D.buried |
| 33.A.Because | B.As | C.Although | D.Moreover |
| 34.A.gets | B.brings | C.produces | D.makes |
| 35.A.the tank | B.another tank | C.the same tank | D.no tank |

VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Lifestyles: Past and Present

From the 20th to the 21th century, there have been significant changes in the majority of countries around the world. Substantial differences are evident between the way we live today, and the way we lived a century ago. Viet Nam is no exception although there are some aspects of life in Viet Nam that are similar to the way of life of the twentieth century.

Living in Viet Nam today differs greatly from the lifestyle of 100 years ago. People in the past mainly worked in agriculture whereas today there are significantly fewer people working in this sector of

the economy. These days, by comparison, people are more likely to be employed in manufacturing and tourism than in the rice fields. Moreover, Viet Nam, which was traditionally agricultural, is transforming into an entirely different country. While agriculture is still an important component of the Vietnamese economy, other enterprises are accounting for an increasing amount of economic activity.

However, along with the differences, similarities also exist. The Vietnamese have kept many of the characteristics of their forefathers. The Vietnamese people are as friendly today as they were in the past. This is best illustrated in the way they welcome foreigners. Moreover, the determination of the people of Viet Nam has not changed. The Vietnamese work **collectively** and happily towards the development of their country.

To conclude, while there are differences in past and present lifestyles, there are important similarities. Although Viet Nam has changed in many ways, there always have been, and always will be, the friendly welcoming smiles of the Vietnamese people.

36. Viet Nam has had significant changes _____.
 A. for one hundred years B. from the 20th century
 C. in the 20th century D. in the 21st century
37. Nowadays, more people work in _____.
 A. agricultural section B. foreign enterprises
 C. the rice fields D. manufacturing and tourism
38. We can infer from the passage that _____.
 A. a lot of people work in agriculture
 B. many people work in accounting
 C. the majority of population works in manufacturing
 D. Viet Nam has kept the same lifestyles
39. All of the following are traditional features of the Vietnamese EXCEPT _____.
 A. the hospitality to strangers B. the friendly welcoming smiles
 C. the entirely different country D. the determination to build the country
40. The word "**collectively**" in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to _____.
 A. very common B. the same as C. owned by a group
 D. as a group

VIII. Write about the important qualities that a person needs to be able to get along with other members in an extended family. Write complete sentences, using the words/ phrases given in their correct forms. You can add some more necessary words, but you have to use all the words given.

41. It/ important/ you/ honest/ say/ what/ you/ think.

42. You/ spend time/ other members/ have close relationships.

43. We/ accept/ differences/ family members/ and/ we/ look/ common interests.

44. It/ certain/ you/ avoid/ make/ unpleasant comments/ other members.

45. Instead/ become/ center of attention/ family/ we/ show/ kindness/ and interests/ others.

TEST 3 UNIT 6

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. a. <u>s</u> atisfied | b. <u>m</u> atched | c. <u>th</u> atched | d. <u>d</u> epressed |
| 2. a. <u>c</u> onsequence | b. <u>o</u> bedient | c. <u>d</u> emand | d. <u>r</u> eport |
| 3. a. <u>s</u> uffer | b. <u>r</u> ubber | c. <u>s</u> uburban | d. <u>t</u> unnel |
| 4. a. <u>w</u> eather | b. <u>s</u> ympathetic | c. <u>w</u> orthy | d. <u>b</u> other |
| 5. a. <u>h</u> appens | b. <u>v</u> ehicle | c. <u>e</u> xhibition | d. <u>e</u> xhaust |

II. Choose the word that has the main stress placed differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. a. mushroom | b. demand | c. sandal | d. tunnel |
| 2. a. underpass | b. exhibit | c. compartment | d. extended |
| 3. a. collective | b. elevate | c. suburban | d. initial |
| 4. a. vocabulary | b. illiteracy | c. cooperative | d. anniversary |
| 5. a. professional | b. pedestrian | c. exhibition | d. facility |

III. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence or substitute for the underlined word.

- Vietnamese prefer riding motorbikes _____ walking to work.
a. to b. for c. than d. rather than
- It is hard _____ us to persuade him to believe what we said.
a. to b. of c. for d. with
- A lot of _____ were built to solve the traffic jam problem at intersections.
a. trams b. flyovers c. skytrains d. tunnels
- My friends were all extremely _____ when they heard I'd lost my job.
a. tolerant b. sympathetic c. obedient d. confident
- Last Wednesday witnessed a sudden drop in raw oil price.
a. significant b. gradual c. sharp d. considerable
- It was unprofessional _____ casual clothes to the international conference.
a. of her to wear b. for her wearing c. for her to wear d. of her wear
- The very first metro is being built to _____ the travel demands of Saigonese.
a. solve b. make c. see d. meet
- _____ ease traffic congestion, it is necessary to promote the development of public transport.
a. Because of b. Despite c. In order to d. Since
- I think life today is _____ comfortable than it was in the past.
a. about as b. a lot more c. more and more d. the more
- A: How was your trip to Vietnam after 10 years?
B: _____
a. Amazing! I couldn't believe how much it has changed!
b. Thank you for asking me.
c. 10 years? It's 11 years.
d. No, I can't tell you.

IV. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

- My father prefers _____ (work) as a farmer rather than a blue-collar worker.
- I can't help _____ (worry) about her traveling abroad on her own.
- Rubber sandals _____ (wear) by Vietnamese soldiers during the war against the French and the Americans.
- She _____ (not think) of writing about educational reformation until I mentioned it.
- In 1995, I _____ (go) back to Vietnam after 30 years.
- In recent years, Vietnam _____ many changes under the influence of economic reform and globalization. (experience)
- It's kind of you _____ (report) to her what happened to her son last night.
- The number of vehicles in Vietnam _____ (increase) by 10 percent every year.
- If you _____ (come) back to the ancient world, where would you visit?
- During our conversation, I realised that we _____ (meet) before.

V. Fill in the blank with the past perfect form of the verb in brackets.

- After the war _____ (end), Vietnamese people focused on dealing with domestic matters.
- How long _____ (they/ be) married before he died?
- Before the invention of Internet, most people _____ (read) newspapers to update current events.
- Why didn't you want to watch the film? _____ (you/ see) it before?
- She _____ (not have) any experience in business communication, so we offered her a training course.

6. Before the introduction of low-cost airlines, Vietnamese _____ (mostly/ travel) by coach.
7. _____ (you/ learn) about Vietnam war before you made the presentation about it?
8. Ethan suddenly realised that he _____ (leave) his laptop on the train.
9. My house was very dirty because I _____ (not clean) it for weeks.
10. She couldn't get access to the Internet because she _____ (not pay) the bill.

VI. Complete the sentence with the past simple or past perfect form of the verb in brackets.

1. They _____ (live) in Paris for 10 years before they _____ (move) home.
2. As soon as I _____ (download) the document, I knew I _____ (make) a mistake.
3. Mary _____ (ring) John's doorbell at 8:15 yesterday but John _____ (already/ leave) the house.
4. By the time the firemen _____ (arrive), the fire _____ (destroy) three houses.
5. Our economy _____ (not stand) a chance of developing before the government _____ (adopt) the open-door policy.
6. When I last _____ (speak) to her, she still _____ (not finish) her assignment.
7. Nobody _____ (come) to the meeting because Angela _____ (forget) to tell them about it.
8. She _____ (go) to Disneyland three times when she _____ (be) a little girl.
9. After I _____ (complete) the form, I _____ (give) it to the secretary.
10. Sarah _____ (drive) three hundred miles by the time she _____ (arrive) in Tacoma.

VII. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Although they never get angry, they are not always kind or _____. (tolerate)
2. Local officials have been very _____ on working together for a solution. (cooperate)
3. I tried to tell her about the awful day I'd had, but she wasn't very _____. (sympathy)
4. Students are expected to be quiet and _____ in the classroom. (obey)
5. Boeing sells a third of its aircraft overseas, making it the biggest _____ in the United States. (export)
6. I see people who have opportunities I don't have, and I get _____. (envy)
7. In the past, Hanoians often went to _____ areas by tram, which was a very famous system. (suburb)
8. She has a small office that is used for _____ discussions. (privacy)
9. Some ministers expressed _____ that they could no longer travel first class. (astonish)
10. We were greatly _____ at the news of their safe return. (relief)

VIII. Choose the correct answers to complete the passage.

Like other big cities in Asia, Ha Noi began to (1) _____ the tram system in the early 1900s. A few years later, due to its cheap fares and convenience, this system rapidly became one of the most popular (2) _____ of transport. There were five tram routes with Hoan Kiem Lake as a central station for residents to get (3) _____ the city and to the suburban areas. However, because of the population boom and the urgent demand for upgrading the more modern road system, the rail tracks were (4) _____ removed and completely disappeared in 1990.

These days, the fact that the population of the capital has risen tremendously results (5) _____ a dramatic increase in the number of vehicles on the roads. To meet the increasing travel demands and reduce traffic congestion, the first 13-kilometre skytrain system, connecting Cat Linh and Ha Dong is (6) _____ and it is expected to be completed by 2018. Each four-compartment skytrain with the length of approximately 80 metres and the height of about 3.8 metres has a (7) _____ of 1,362 passengers. Additionally, a new rail system including over eight kilometres of skytrain rail and four kilometres of subway rail, (8) _____ links Ha Noi Central Station to Nhon, also has being built recently. The capacity of each skytrain in this efficient high-speed rail system is roughly 1,200 passengers.

1. a. discover b. improve c. operate d. install
2. a. ways b. systems c. spaces d. means

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 3. a. around | b. over | c. by | d. ahead |
| 4. a. occasionally | b. gradually | c. regularly | d. eventually |
| 5. a. on | b. at | c. in | d. with |
| 6. a. pressed | b. launched | c. produced | d. announced |
| 7. a. ability | b. position | c. consistency | d. capacity |
| 8. a. which | b. what | c. whose | d. where |

IX. Read the text carefully, then do the tasks.

From the 20th to the 21st century, there have been significant changes all over the world. Substantial differences are evident between the way we live today, and the way we lived a century ago. Vietnam is no exception although there are some facets of life that still resemble the way of life of the twentieth century.

Living in Vietnam today differs greatly from the lifestyle of 100 years ago. People in the past mainly worked in agriculture whereas today there are significantly less people working in this sector of the economy. These days, by comparison, people are more likely to be employed in manufacturing and tourism than in the rice fields. Moreover, Vietnam, which was traditionally agrarian, is transforming into an entirely different country. While agriculture is still an important component of the Vietnamese economy, other enterprises are accounting for an increasing amount of economic activity.

However, along with the differences, similarities also exist. The people of Vietnam have retained many of the characteristics of their forefathers. The Vietnamese people are as friendly today as they were in the past. This is best exemplified in the way they welcome foreigners to their unique country. Moreover, the resilience and determination of the people of Vietnam has not changed. The Vietnamese work collectively and happily towards the development of their country.

A. Decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

1. A minority of countries around the world have experienced dramatic change in the previous century.
2. Vietnam is not as agrarian as it was in the past.
3. Vietnamese people nowadays are friendlier to foreigners than they used to be.
4. The differences between the lifestyles of yesterday and the lifestyles of today are not evident.
5. Some of the characteristics of Vietnamese people never change.
6. Vietnamese people are very resilient and determined.

B. Answer the questions.

7. How have lifestyles changed for the last century?

-
8. What characteristics of Vietnamese people have not changed?
-

X. Read the text carefully, then choose the correct answers.

In the early 17th century, most of the southern region of Vietnam was nearly uninhabited and in the position of Ho Chi Minh City, there was a small village formed with a few residents. However, thanks to its advantage in location, the town grew both economically and politically. By the 19th century, this had become a cultural hub of the South as well as an important trading center of the country.

You might not know that there was a time Saigon was referred to as the Pearl of the Far East. Sadly, having been through various occurrences and two disastrous wars has stunted the city's development. Only after the political instabilities had settled, Saigon recovered miraculously and maintained its leading position in terms of both the economics and culture. Officially named as Ho Chi Minh City, Saigon today has 22 districts in total and attracts hundreds of thousands of tourists annually.

1. What is the best title of the passage?

a. Saigon: Lost and Found	b. Saigon: Then and Now
c. Saigon: Now and Then	d. Saigon: Hub of the South East Vietnam
2. According to the passage, Saigon was _____ in the early 17th century.

a. a financial center	b. an uninhabited region
c. a small village	d. an important city
3. What happened with Saigon in the 19th century?

a. It became popular all over Asia.

- b. It became a cultural hub of the South and an important trading center of Vietnam.
- c. It became the most important trading center in the world.
- d. It was no longer visited by international tourists.
- 4. The city's development has been stunted because of _____.
 - a. two disastrous wars
 - b. some major historic events
 - c. natural disasters and disastrous wars
 - d. different occurrences and disastrous wars
- 5. The word "occurrences" is closest in meaning to _____.
 - a. situations b. adventures c. incidents d. affairs
- 6. Which of the following sentences is NOT true?
 - a. In the early 17th century, there were only a few residents living on the position of Saigon.
 - b. The location of Saigon helped the town develop its economy and politics.
 - c. Saigon was once referred as the Pearl of the Far East.
 - d. Saigon had recovered and held its leading position before the political instabilities settled.

XI. Rewrite these sentences, using *be + adjective + (of + noun/pronoun) + to-infinitive*.

- 1. Learning how to live in space is difficult.
It is difficult to learn how to live in space.
- 2. I learned that I had been promoted. I was delighted.

- 3. He shouldn't press the emergency button. It was stupid.

- 4. Having interests outside work is necessary.

- 5. John gave them £100. It was very generous.

- 6. They saw the driver was a six-year-old boy. They were astonished.

- 7. Thank you for visiting me in hospital. It was very kind.

- 8. Being in good health is very important for athletes.

- 9. We heard that your father's in hospital again. We're sorry.

- 10. Why did he make that remark? It was very rude.

XII. Complete the second sentence so that It has the same meaning as the first.

- 1. It was confident of him to say that he was the best student in his school.
→ He was _____
- 2. Our lifestyle has changed considerably since the introduction of Western culture.
→ There has _____
- 3. It's exciting for me to learn that I can come to visit my friend in Phu Yen next month.
→ I am _____
- 4. Those children need to be taught about how Vietnam has transformed itself.
→ It is _____
- 5. She was so rude to shout at his face in the department store.
→ It was _____
- 6. My father was pleased when he learned that I had passed the entrance exam to high school.
→ My father _____
- 7. Everybody had gone home when I came to the party.
→ As soon as _____

8. This country is unsafe to visit during summer vacation.

→ It is _____

9. There has been a dramatic increase in the number of people learning English.

→ The number of people _____

10. Phong went to the beach after working hard for a week.

→ After Phong _____

XIII. Write a new sentence with the same meaning containing the word in capitals.

1. He was so brave that he could tell her what he thought about her. (IT)

2. Your bad news upsets me very much. (SORRY)

3. There has been a slight drop in the number of people using public transport. (SLIGHTLY)

4. Revising for exams takes up all my time at the moment. (BUSY)

5. There was an increased demand for travel, so the government decided to invest in building the very first metro system. (AS)

6. I don't know much about historical events, so I can't help her with her history homework. (IF)

7. This is the first time I have heard about the tram system in Hanoi. (NEVER)

8. Firefighters spent two hours releasing the driver from the wreckage. (IT)

9. They took the president to the hospital for an emergency operation. (WAS)

10. I had saved my document before the computer crashed. (AFTER)

TEST YOURSELF 1(UNIT 4,5,6)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>e</u> xtended | B. <u>e</u> ntertain | C. <u>p</u> icturesque | D. <u>e</u> levated |
| 2. A.th <u>a</u> tched | B.s <u>p</u> ectacular | C.s <u>n</u> ack | D.r <u>i</u> ckshaw |
| 3. A. <u>c</u> omplex | B. <u>n</u> oticeable | C. <u>c</u> ooperative | D. <u>c</u> ounterpart |

II. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 4. A.underpass | B.astonished | C.contestant | D.occasion |
| 5. A.illiterate | B.spectacular | C.significant | D.noticeable |

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

6. Wooden clogs have been the simple _____ of Vietnamese women for ages.
A.sign B.signal C.symbol D.mark
7. Rickshaw looks _____ in each of Viet Nam: Ha Noi's rickshaw is wider and low, Hue's is a bit narrower but longer, Saigon's rickshaw is tall and long.
A.different - area B.the same - part C.different - region D.differently - region
8. Survey findings _____ that the current family remains an important production unit of society.
A.explain B.record C.express D.show
9. Before 1975 in South Viet Nam, there _____ 3 state universities built in cities of Hue, Saigon, Can Tho.
A.was B.were C.would be D.used to be
10. Many workers wish that they _____ labour contracts with the companies.
A.sign B.signed C.were signed D.were signing
11. We wish that smart boards _____ in our school.
A.install B.had installed C.were installed D.was installed

12. The photos by a British diplomat capture the _____ of old bicycles, crowded electric trams, the queue to buy goods and lines of barrels waiting to collect water in the 1980s.
A.ideas B.images C.minds D.thinking
13. After people had asked for scholars' handwriting, they _____ them up during the Tet festival.
A.hang B.hung C.hanged D.had hung
14. The life at that time was very difficult _____ every family tried to buy a branch of peach blossoms to display on the Lunar New Year Festival.
A.but B.so C.despite D.although
15. We suggest that the authorities _____ street children from following foreign tourists in the downtown.
A.will stop B.stopped C.would stop D.should stop

IV. Fill in each blank in the passage with the correct word from the box. There are some extra words.

<i>powers</i>	<i>strength</i>	<i>attraction</i>	<i>families</i>
<i>space</i>	<i>impressions</i>	<i>fun</i>	<i>generations</i>

Traditional Folk Games of the Vietnamese

As a result of the modern life, after school time, children in cities don't have enough (16) _____, and friends to play together. While parents are busy with their business, the children are kept inside 4 concrete walls and entertain themselves with watching television, playing with their toys or playing video games.

However, the traditional folk games still have very strong and magical (17) _____ to every child. They might not play it very often as the older (18) _____ did, but the stories about these folk games will still be told in every family.

The most favourite folk games must be listed are: the game of Dragon and Snake, the game of Cat and Mouse, Marble game in the Vietnamese style. Mandarin's Square, hide and seek... More than (19) _____, these folk games improve the smartness and (20) _____ of observation in children.

V. Here are Cham towers listed as the National Heritage in Binh Dinh. Write sentences about them, using the imperative passive with the verbs given in brackets.

21. Hung Thanh Tower (also known as Thap Doi) in Quy Nhon was built during Khmer occupations in Champa in the 13th century. (think)

22. The edges of the roofs Canh Tien tower were built of sandstone. (say)

23. Binh Lam Tower was built between the end of the 10th century with the spectacular and powerful architecture style. (believe)

24. Symmetrical style motifs were carved directly into Cham bricks in Binh Lam Tower. (claim)

25. Silver Tower (also known as Banh It Tower) was built between the end of 11th and the beginning of the 12th century on a hill of Tuy Phuoc District. (consider)

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Subsidy economy from 1976 to 1986 means all (26) _____ of goods and raw materials are in the (27) _____ of the central government. The government coordinated all steps of economy from planning, collecting, and distributing to (28) _____. Each person (29) _____ with standard distributions which depended (30) _____ working level, age, rank and position in government or professional.

(31)_____essential supplies had many problems, for example, four people shared a pair of bicycle tires, or even a blanket. Sometimes one pig was shared among 20 households, everyone wanted to take the good (32)_____and very difficult to divide fairly. Moreover, because of bad storage and complicated delivery, many supplied foods were in bad condition, such as broken, rotten or even poisonous. Each family got (33)_____own rice booklet shown date and number kilos of rice. During that time, the Vietnamese had a famous saying, "Your face (34)____sad like (35)_____the rice booklet".

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 26.A.sources | B.resources | C.causes | D.places |
| 27.A.help | B.supplies | C.hands | D.palms |
| 28.A.passengers | B.consumers | C.clients | D.employees |
| 29.A.delivered | B.were delivered | C.was delivered | D.has delivered |
| 30.A.to | B.at | C.in | D.on |
| 31.A.Shares | B.Sharing | C.Cutting | D.Exchanging |
| 32.A.parts | B.elements | C.features | D.factors |
| 33.A.its | B.his | C.her | D.their |
| 34.A.looks | B.looks like | C.looks at | D.looks as |
| 35.A.lose | B.to lose | C.losing | D.being lost |

VII. Read the passage, and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question.

Education System of Viet Nam in the Past

Because of 1,000 years under the control of China, there were no records which indicated a formal education system in Viet Nam. In 939, Emperor Ngo Quyen expelled the Chinese invaders and declared Vietnamese independence. But the first two dynasties Ngo and Dinh did not last so long, and were busy with the national defense, so the education was just in pagodas. Ly Cong Uan, the founder king of the Ly dynasty had been educated in a pagoda.

To the Ly dvnasty, the fundamental educational system was officially improved, King Ly Thanh Ton established the Temple of Literature at the ancient Capital of Thang Long to encourage people to appreciate the education. In 1075, the first exam was done by the order of King Ly Nhan Ton to select scholars for the office and the later year, 1076, the Imperial Academy, the first university in Viet Nam's history, was set up for the education of sons of royalty and other high-ranking officials.

There were also many private classes taught by prominent scholars such as Chu Van An, Le Quy Don, Nguyen Binh Khiem,Phung Khac Khoan,Vu Truong Toan... The students would only study literature and ancient history of China, of Viet Nam for entirety of their schooling. Later on, the Public Administration curriculum was finally added to the programme. When the Ho Royal family ruled the country, students were taught simple mathematics.

From 1918 to 1945, Viet Nam's education programme adopted the western education system with three levels: elementary, high school, and college. At all levels, from 1945 the Vietnamese national language is officially used. Students have the opportunity to learn literature, history, philosophy, law, science, math, medicine and other languages.

36. In the 10th century, parents_____.
- could let their children have a formal education
 - were too busy to send their children to school
 - could send their children to pagodas to have some schooling
 - didn't want their children go to school under the control of China
37. All of the following were done during the Ly dynasty EXCEPT that_____.
- all good students could go to the Imperial Academy
 - King Ly Thanh Ton established the Temple of Literature
 - the Imperial Academy was established in 1076
 - King Ly Nhan Ton ordered to hold the first exam to select scholars
38. In the past, students mostly learned_____.
- public administration
 - science subjects and mathematics
 - the ways to rule the country
 - literature and ancient history

39. We can infer from the passage that _____.
 A. the private classes replaced the Imperial Academy
 B. education was highly appreciated during the dynasties
 C. mathematics was highly developed during the Ho dynasty
 D. the prominent scholars such as Le Quy Don couldn't teach at the Imperial Academy
40. From 1918 to 1945, Viet Nam's education system _____.
 A. officially used the Vietnamese national language
 B. was divided into three levels
 C. was the same as the western education system
 D. had a wide range of subjects at college

TEST YOURSELF 2(UNIT 4,5,6)

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. a. <u>tolerant</u> | b. back <u>drop</u> | c. re <u>mo</u> te | d. <u>dogs</u> led |
| 2. a. beha <u>vi</u> or | b. h <u>a</u> bit | c. tra <u>m</u> way | d. ca <u>s</u> hew |
| 3. a. re <u>w</u> ard | b. se <u>w</u> age | c. <u>w</u> ealthy | d. <u>w</u> onder |
| 4. a. compu <u>t</u> er | b. <u>u</u> niform | c. contribu <u>t</u> e | d. monu <u>m</u> ent |
| 5. a. constru <u>ct</u> s | b. equi <u>p</u> s | c. trave <u>l</u> s | d. develo <u>p</u> s |

II. Choose the word that has the main stress placed differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. a. en <u>v</u> ious | b. asto <u>n</u> ished | c. sub <u>u</u> rban | d. defen <u>s</u> ive |
| 2. a. househo <u>l</u> d | b. tunne <u>l</u> | c. igloo | d. respect |
| 3. a. flyo <u>v</u> er | b. skytra <u>i</u> n | c. rubbe <u>r</u> | d. success |
| 4. a. oppo <u>r</u> tunity | b. admini <u>s</u> trative | c. possib <u>i</u> lity | d. universi <u>t</u> y |
| 5. a. me <u>d</u> ium | b. dan <u>g</u> erous | c. pictu <u>r</u> esque | d. obvi <u>o</u> us |

III. Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

thatched	citadel	pilgrims	obesity	spectacular
relieved	facilities	picturesque	pedestrian	underpasses

- Hundreds of thousands of _____ flock to Jerusalem every year.
- Vietnamese students used to study in classrooms with _____ roofs.
- He was _____ to see Jeannie reach the other side of the river safely.
- Hue _____ is situated on the northern bank of the Perfume River.
- Hoi An is a _____ ancient port town, with an old quarter that dates back to the 15th century.
- The hotel offers good sporting _____, including a 50 meters swimming pool.
- A diet that is high in fat and sugar can lead to _____.
- We can build more, _____ to improve the traffic flow.
- Elevated walkways are built to improve _____ safety.
- We had a _____ view of Megan's Bay on the tour!

IV. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

- Son Doong Cave will be _____ ruins if the cable car system is constructed.
 a. in b. at c. on d. out
- In the 17th century, the Viet people _____ the temple tower, calling it ThienY Thanh Mau Tower.
 a. got into b. took over c. looked after d. put up
- The Imperial Citadel of Thang Long is a _____ that consists of royal palaces and monuments.
 a. complex b. structure c. setting d. measure
- The tram's clanging sounds have gone deep into the _____ of Hanoians.
 a. minds and souls b. hearts and minds
 c. hearts and bodies d. bodies and spirits
- I wish that he _____ to me about his living conditions.

- a. will never lie b. would lie never c. would never lie d. could never lie
6. I was surprised _____ what happened at the end of the film.
a. finding out b. in finding out c. to find out d. that I found out
7. It's _____ that you should follow a regular training programme.
a. pleasant b. confident c. conscious d. essential
8. The doctor suggested I _____ more exercise to keep my blood pressure down.
a. do b. to do c. doing d. could do
9. Giving lucky money to children and the elderly is one of the most common _____ during the Lunar New Year.
a. behaviors b. habits c. events d. practices
10. A: I'm thinking about a topic for our next discussion.
B: _____.
a. Do you think about it?
b. To me, this discussion always brings me happiness.
c. I suggest talking about preserving natural wonders of Vietnam.
d. Why do you have to consider its benefits?

V. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. By the time Alex finished his studies, he _____ (be) in London for over eight years.
2. At the moment the population of the world _____ (grow) at an increasing rate.
3. It _____ (claim) that some doctors were working 80 hours a week.
4. My mother suggested I _____ (throw) away some of the stuff in my closet.
5. While we _____ (do) the maths test, the fire alarm _____ (go) off.
6. I wish I _____ (earn) enough money to travel around the world.
7. She _____ (not set) foot in Ho Chi Minh City since she graduated from University of Economy.
8. They said they _____ (live) in Chicago for six years.
9. She suggested _____ (travel) together for safety, since the area was so dangerous.
10. It's hard for me _____ (concentrate) on working in such a noisy office.

VI. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. _____ is a state whereby one is unable to read and write. (literate)
2. Show teenagers that you respect their _____ by knocking on their bedroom door. (private)
3. Reality TV has been a very successful form of mass _____. (entertain)
4. The _____ needs to know what rocks the drill has reached. (geology)
5. It's difficult to _____ with a negative people who will do nothing to help themselves. (sympathy)
6. The Eiffel Tower in Paris is an instantly _____ landmark. (recognize)
7. She pretends that she knows all about the latest films and art _____, but it's all a pose. (exhibit)
8. The company produces computers in _____ with a German firm. (cooperate)
9. He is a pleasant child, but often rowdy, _____ and rough with others. (obey)
10. My biggest weakness was my lack of sympathy or _____ for incompetence. (tolerate)

VII. Mark the letter a, b, c or d to indicate that underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.

1. The doctor suggested that she does exercises regularly and go to bed as early as possible.
A B C D
2. I wish I can set foot on every corner of Vietnam when I reach 40.
A B C D
3. They are getting used to eating alone as their parents often come home lately.
A B C D
4. It is expected that there has been more than 5 million international tourists to visit Ha Long A

- B C D Bay this year.
5. I used to having a very bad argument with my Maths teacher when I was at high school.
- A B C D
6. In spite of his dropped out of Harvard in 1975, Bill Gates managed to found Microsoft with his childhood friend.
- A B C D
7. The number of milk tea shopshas increasedconsiderable in Ho Chi Minh City during the last two years.
- B C D A
8. If time had turned back, I would enjoy my childhood in the most fabulous way.
- A B C D
9. No matter howhardly I tried, I couldn't understand the meaning of the story.
- A B C D
10. Vietnamese young people prefer eating out to cook the meals on their own.
- A B C D

VIII. Match sentences.

A

- Why do we need to preserve the natural wonders of Vietnam?
- How can we know the schedule of the metro?
- You really must come over Thien Mu Pagoda after visiting Hue Citadel.
- What should we do to reduce the air pollution in Saigon?
- What do you think about nuclear families?
- I really hope you have a good time in Saigon.
- What is the best way to get around?

B

- I suggest using public transportation every day.
- I don't like the idea and I think the extended one is the best.
- Thank you. I will.
- Use a bike or take the bus.
- That's good to know.
- Google it!
- To ensure that the future generation can also see and experience them.
- Our cultural identities would be lost.

IX. Choose the correct answers to complete the passage.

As I remember, (1)_____ in the 50s and 60s, Ha Noi was not as crowded as it is today. Bicycles and cyclos were the main means of transport and the few motorbikes that were around were (2)_____ by rich people. It was rare to see cars or jeeps.

Meanwhile, the tram was the only method of public transport. An old tram station is now home (3)_____ several retail outlets that look out over the lake in Dinh Tien Hoang Street.

At that time, Hanoians always travelled by tram, not only for its (4)_____ but also the price. For just five cents you could travel one-way to it's terminus in the former Ha Dong Province, (5)_____ is

now part of the expanded Ha Noi.

I still remember on (6)_____ from school, my friends and I would go to the lake to catch the tram to Botanical Garden. The sound, clang-clang, clang-clang could be regularly heard from early in the morning until late in the evening, come rain or (7)_____. Time, ... decades have passed, but there is still a clang (8)_____ in my mind from my childhood.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. a. move | b. place | c. set | d. back |
| 2. a. bought | b. owned | c. sold | d. proceeded |
| 3. a. with | b. in | c. to | d. by |
| 4. a. convenience | b. importance | c. comfort | d. condition |
| 5. a. that | b. which | c. where | d. this |
| 6. a. days out | b. out days | c. off days | d. days off |
| 7. a. light | b. rise | c. shine | d. brighten |
| 8. a. somewhat | b. somewhere | c. somehow | d. someway |

X. Read the text carefully. Decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F) and choose the correct answers.

The Temple of Literature was constructed in 1070 under Ly Thanh Tong's dynasty to honor Confucius at first and celebrate the doctorates and high rank scholars of Vietnam. In 1076, King Ly Nhan Tong continued the work and built Quoc Tu Giam as the first university of Vietnam.

The temple is divided into five court yards, each with its own significance and history. The first courtyard stretches from the main gate to Dai Trung gate. The second stands out with Khue Van Cac pavilion. The third courtyard is where doctors' names were engraved on stelae above tortoise backs. There are a total of 82 stelae, with names and origins of 1307 doctors, corresponding to 82 examination courses from 1442 to 1779. The fourth courtyard is dedicated for Confucius and his 72 honored students, as well as Chu Van An - a famous teacher known for his devotion to teaching. This is also where local authorities choose to honor outstanding students in Hanoi nowadays, like those with top entrance results to university or top graduation outcomes. The last and also furthest courtyard is Thai Hoc house, which used to be Quoc Tu Giam - the first university of Vietnam.

After more than 900 years of existence, the Temple of Literature is an example of well-preserved traditional Vietnamese architecture. Along the pass are 100-year-old trees that have witnessed the ups and downs of history.

1. The construction of the Temple of Literature took place in 1076.
2. Quoc Tu Giam is considered to be the first university of Vietnam.
3. The names and places of birth of doctors were carved on tortoise backs.
4. Chu Van An used to be a teacher at Quoc Tu Giam.
5. The Temple of Literature has now lost most of its traditional Vietnamese architecture.
6. What does the text mainly discuss?
 - a. The location of the Temple of Literature.
 - b. The origin of the Temple of Literature.
 - c. The structure of the Temple of Literature.
 - d. The first university of Vietnam.
7. The word "stelae" in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to _____.
 - a. tombstones
 - b. trophies
 - c. records
 - d. pillars
8. It can be inferred from the passage that _____.
 - a. Confucius was the first teacher of Quoc Tu Giam.
 - b. the Temple of Literature is an important historic site in Vietnam.
 - c. Quoc Tu Giam is located far away from the Temple of Literature.
 - d. Vietnamese people highly appreciate the talent of scholars.

XI. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. You should use less paper to protect the environment.

→ If I _____

2. There has been a sharp increase in the number of skyscrapers built in Hanoi this year.

- The number of _____
3. He suggested visiting Moc Chau to learn about Thai and H'mong people.
- What about _____
4. They believe that touching the head of a Buddha statue is a sign of disrespect.
- It _____
5. It's a pity I can't get my visa extended.
- I wish _____
6. "Please follow my instructions if you want to pass this module," my teacher said.
- My teacher told me _____
7. They had been on board before he arrived at the airport.
- As soon as _____
8. How long has you possessed that Chanel bag?
- When _____
9. "Why do I have to conduct this research?" she asked me.
- She asked me _____
10. He needs to talk to psychologist about his current situation.
- It is _____

KEYS ANSWER
UNIT 1: LOCAL ENVIRONMENT
TEST 1 (Unit 1)

I.

1. C 2. A 3. D

II.

4. B 5. A

III/

6. D 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. A 11. B 12. D 13. B 14. C 15. D

IV/

1. handicrafts 2. materials 3. craft 4. respects 5. master

V/

1. Since Viet Nam's current labor costs are lower compared to other countries, it brings advantages to both medium and small handicraft manufacturers.
2. When Giang got the loans from the project, he opened a small enterprise of ceramics.
3. Although Green Craft has a lot of difficulties, it continually works to improve its productivity, designing and sampling.
4. The government carried out a job training programme in rural areas so that young people could find jobs in their own villages.
5. Some heads of the businesses had problems to find markets for they have not been trained in management.

VI.

1. The traditional handicraft villages used to face up to a shortage of investments and human resources.
2. Farmers can live on traditional handicrafts as they are free between harvests.
3. People in the community often get on with one another so that they can follow the same craft.
4. In the future, some traditional handicraft cooperatives will run out of wood to make wooden furniture.
5. After the trip, you come back to the harbor to take a boat trip to Hoi An.

VII/

1. Many craft families stopped their business because there is the economic crisis in the world.
2. Although Dong Ho paintings are simple, these pictures reflect a typical characteristic of Vietnamese labourers.

3. Three villages were chosen for the pilot project after the Asia Foundation had worked with local authorities.
4. We do not have many handicraft products that are well-known abroad, though there are thousands of craft trades nationwide.
5. The craft village must also meet environmental requirements so that it can develop craft village tourism.
6. When Viet Nam began integrating into the international economy a few decades ago, production in craft villages developed strongly, meeting demand for domestic decoration, and construction.
7. At the age of over 80, the artisan is instructing the craft to his grandchildren so that they can preserve this ancient craft.
8. After the workers have taken several steps to whiten the palm leaves, they sew together the leaves and the rings.
9. The conical hat has several useful functions because it protects the wearer's head and face from sunlight or rain, and it also works as a handy fan on hot summer days.

VIII/

1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. D 9. D 10. C

IX/

1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. C

X/

Dear Susan,

1. It takes you only 30 minutes by motorbike to go to Van Phuc silk village from the centre of Hanoi.
 2. The village has been much well known for its traditional sericulture, weaving, and silk products.
 3. Most visitors can go around to observe skillful workers producing goods, listening to local stories.
 4. If you intend to have a silk pair of formal clothes, just select your suitable materials and professional tailors here will bring you satisfaction.
 5. You can buy silk and clothes made of silk as presents available around in the village for your choice.
- Look forward to seeing you soon!

Best wishes

TEST 2 (Unit 1)

I+II/

1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. D

III/

6. A 7. C 8. D 9. C 10. A 11. B 12. D 13. B 14. D 15. C

IV/

1. quality 2. costumes 3. return 4. skills 5. design

V/

1. Labourers in the Mekong Delta can live on their crafts during the flood seasons.
2. The methods of producing handcrafted paper flowers in Thanh Tien village in Hue were passed down from generation to generation to keep the craft alive.
3. The tour guide gave a short speech so that foreign visitors could find out about the process of making fish sauce in Phu Quoc.
4. Craft village development is now a good way to deal with the poverty in rural areas, (deal with)
5. We are looking forward to the trip in order to discover the traditional craft villages round Hue.

VI/

1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. C

VII/

1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F 6. T 7. T 8. T

VIII

- Task 1. 1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C

- Task 2. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F 6. F 7. T 8. T

IX

1. You will start the trip by taking a short walk down to the harbor of Hoi An, where you will board a wooden boat.
 2. First, you will get to the pottery Thanh Ha village, where the local people continue making craft pots by hand.
 3. Then, you will continue visiting the carpentry village of Kim Bong, which has had a huge influence on the architecture in Hoi An.
 4. The traditional carpentry is kept alive and still used for restoring the old buildings in Hoi An. Your trip finishes with a boat trip back to the ancient town of Hoi An.
- Look forward to seeing you soon!

X/

Dear Ann,

1. Du Du craft village is a traditional sculpture village with various kinds of products.
 2. When you arrive at Du Du village, you will have a chance to study full processes of statue making from raw material to a finished product.
 3. Thanks to skillful hands, the products become lively and artistic.
 4. Statues made by Du Du workers look like real humans from a glint to a smile.
 5. Many artisans from the village made a lot of wooden statues in the Hue Citadel.
- Look forward to seeing you soon!

Best wishes

TEST 3 UNIT 1

- I.** 1. c 2. a 3. b 4. d 5. c
- II.** 1. a 2. b 3. b 4. c 5. d
- III.** 1. a 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. a 6. c 7. d 8. d 9. b 10. a
- IV.** 1. c 2. f 3. h 4. a 5. b 6. e 7. d 8. g
- V.** 1. ironed 2. woven 3. knitted 4. embroidered
5. carved 6. mould 7. cast 8. produced
- VI.** 1. off 2. down 3. to 4. down 5. from
6. with 7. up 8. off 9. forward 10. down
- VII.** 1. Local people can live on by providing tourists with necessary services.
2. That man gets on with the owner of Los Angeles County Museum of Art.
3. Pictures of the suspect were brought out in all daily papers.
4. The Earth has run out of oil and gas.
5. The council had to call off the football match because of the storm.
6. She was looking through a magazine as she waited in the doctor's office.
7. I will come back to Hoi An to have another week of adventure this summer.
8. After leaving college, he set up his own business with a bank loan.
9. She promised to meet me at the cinema this evening, but she didn't turn up.
10. Nicholas set off to the remote farmhouse in Connecticut yesterday.
- VIII.** 1. are imagining 2. went - was studying 3. to preserve 4. closed
5. has been 6. was completed 7. reviving 8. Have you ever been
- IX.** 1. produce 2. youngsters 3. skillful 4. authentic 5. attraction
6. tourism 7. preservation 8. embroidery 9. cultural 10. memorable
- X.** 1. Craftsmen and women play role as the heart and soul of Hanoi's crafts.
2. Mr. Hoa and his wife preserve the cardboard mask tradition.
3. There are 4 materials to make that craft. They are newspapers, glue, paint and paintbrushes.
4. The craft making process depends on dry weather.
5. The swan frames are made of notebook paper.
6. The artisan uses rice water to smooth the frames.
7. Glass-beads and silk flowers are added to color the finished product.

- XI.** 1. handicraft 2. set 3. long-standing 4. artisans
5. where 6. skillful 7. completely 8. souvenirs
- XII.** 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F 6. T 7. F
- XIII.** 1. I'm looking forward to the upcoming pottery workshop.
2. The pop star was invited to the chat show, but he didn't arrive.
3. The teacher asked him to go out because he misbehaved in the class.
4. Figures of lions and unicorns were carved on the top of the box by the artisans.
5. Turn off the computer when you leave.
6. They paid for dinner in order to apologize for their behaviour.
7. When I was a child, I used to go to the local park every Saturday afternoon.
8. They are being made to study hard by their teacher.
- XIV.** 1. Hoa knows the process of making pottery because she was born in Doc So craft village.
2. Many important historical documents were destroyed when the library was bombed.
3. As soon as she entered the room, she knew there was something wrong./ She knew there was something wrong as soon as she entered the room.
4. We decided to take rooms in Longwood House even though we knew we could not afford the rent./ Even though we knew we could not afford the rent, we decided to take rooms in Longwood House.
5. My mom instructed me through 15 stages of making a conical hat so that I could make one for me.
6. You should watch tutorials on YouTube before you want to knit a hat for your friend.
7. I wanted to leave early as I was not enjoying the party./ As I was not enjoying the party, I wanted to leave early.
8. While I was cleaning out my cupboards, I found these photos./ I found these photos while I was cleaning out my cupboards.
9. I went to Malaysia last year in order to experience a whole new world.
10. Although I attended a knitting workshop last Sunday, I don't know how to knit a scarf./ I don't know how to knit a scarf although I attended a knitting workshop last Sunday.
- XV.** 1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. d 6. b 7. a 8. b

UNIT 2: CITY LIFE

TEST 1 (Unit 2)

I+II/

1. B. D 3. c 4. A 5. B

III/

6. C 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. A 11. D 12. B 13. D 14. A 15. C

IV/

1. symbols 2. important 3. romantic 4. Identity 5. ancient

V/

1. take off 2. grew up 3. looking forward to 4. set up 5. turns up

VI/

1. D 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C 36. B 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. A

VII/

1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. D

VIII/

1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. NG 6. T 7. T 8. T

IX/

1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. NG 7. F 8. T

X/

1. Although living in the city has many advantages, there are some disadvantages too.
2. The cost of living is very high in the city because most goods are very expensive.
3. The environment is polluted with dust, smoke, garbage and dioxide gases from factories, and the streets are dusty and unclean.

4. As there are a lot of vehicles and people in the road, the city is always busy and noisy.
5. Therefore, it is hard to lead a healthy life in the city

TEST 2 (Unit 2)

I+II/

- 1.D2. c3. A 4. B 5. D

III/

6. C 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D 11.C 12. A 13. D 14. D 15. A

IV/

1. national 2. financial 3. increasing 4. multinational 5. Iconic

V/

1. Ann is very upset because the local authorities have turned down her proposals to install solar panels to supply electricity for traffic lights.
- 2.A committee has been set up to examine the question.
- 3.Our class football team lost the match, so we tried to cheer them up.
- 4.“Can I wear jeans at the wedding party?” - “Of course not. You’ll have to dress up.”
- 5.Before I come to a decision, I’ll have to think over their offer very carefully.

VI/

1. B 2. D 3. A 4.C 5. C

VII/

1. He likes Central Park where he goes skateboarding.
- 2.He thinks it is too quiet and boring, and the social life is not good enough for teenagers.
- 3.She likes going hiking in the mountains in the summer.
- 4.She likes going snowboarding in the winter.
- 5.She thinks it is too noisy, too dirty, too crowded and too expensive.

VIII

- 1.C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. D

IX/

1. Hoi An is the most beautiful town in Viet Nam.
- 2.If you get there on a full moon day, all lights are turned off.
3. Only lanterns are hung, and the view is spectacular.
- 4.It is more fabulous when you stand on the pavement and watch people passing by.
- 5.Tourists and backpackers (will) have a wonderful time in Hoi An.

TEST 3 UNIT 2

- I. 1. b 2. a 3. c 4. d 5. a

- II. 1. a 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. c

- III. 1. b 2. a 3. c 4. d 5. a 6. c 7. c 8. b 9. d 10. d

- IV. 1. b 2. a 3. c 4. d 5. a 6. c 7. b 8. d 9. c 10. d
11. a 12. b 13. d 14. c

- V. 1. the most liveable 2. cheaper 3. the best 4. as reasonable as
5. the worst 6. luckier 7. the least 8. as quietly as
9. farther/ further 10. most popular

- VI. 1. to think 2. to learn 3. playing 4. to travel 5. sitting
6. confirming 7. singing 8. to perform 9. watering 10. give

- VII. 1. got on with 2. getting over 3. came across 4. go over 5. turned down
6. went on 7. think over 8. looking forward to 9. knock down 10. looked after

- VIII. 1. setting 2. pulled 3. turn 4. cheer 5. go
6. dressed 7. take 8. find 9. get 10. turned

- IX. 1. doesn't really begin 2. to happen 3. went/ had gone 4. was originally designed
5. are still searching 6. has visited 7. was playing 8. getting

- X. 1. affordable 2. reliable 3. cultural 4. attraction
5. population 6. fashionable 7. dwellers 8. pleasant

XI. 1. b 2. a 3. b 4.d 5. d 6. b 7. c 8. c

XII. 1. Toronto is in Canada.

2. Greater Toronto Area has a population of more than 5 million.
3. Its wide range of cultures, languages, food and arts makes Toronto proud of itself.
4. One of the first things in Toronto that appeals to tourists is its citizen's friendliness.
5. Toronto's highly artistic culture and fascinating museums proudly display the country's history.
6. Toronto's climate is partially moderated.
7. Summertime is the festival time in Toronto.
8. The city greets more than one million visitors In Caribana festival.

XIII. 1. c 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. a 6. d

XIV. 1. This is the first time I have had to wait this long for a bus.

2. Remember to put down what the tour guide said.
3. We spent 3 hours discovering the inner Hanoi.
4. Dickens' "David Copperfield" is the most popular book.
5. Why don't you think over our suggestion before making official decision?
6. Doing homework is more important than watching TV.
7. My friend is a brilliant pianist.
8. I feel so bored of/ with most of the young men of my age.

XV. 1. This gym is not as convenient as the one near my house.

2. Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
3. Modern Christian theology has been influenced by his writings.
4. The group plans to set up an import business.
5. No other man in the office is more capable than his father.
6. The product quickly had an influence on the market.
7. Jonah had obviously made an effort to dress up smart clothes for the occasion.
8. Losing weight is more difficult than putting on weight.

XVI. 1. Real Zaragoza is better than Real Madrid.

2. He thinks Chinese is the most difficult language in the world.
3. No one in his class is taller than him.
4. She is the best singer in the class.
5. Munnar is the prettiest hill stations in India.
6. Mary thinks Melbourne is more "liveable" than any other city in Australia.
7. Lifestyle in Malaysia is not different from Thailand.
8. Ho Chi Minh City is not as busy as Beijing.

UNIT 3: TEEN STRESS AND PRESSURE

TEST 1 (Unit 3)

I+II/

1.A2.C3. B 4. A 5. D

III/

6. C 7. A 8. C 9. D 10.B 11. D 12. D 13.D 14. C 15. A

IV/

1 .Adolescence 2. cognitive 3. concentrate 4. confident 5.resolve
6.tense 7. helpline 8. sites 9. frustrated 10. independent

V/

1. scores 2. exams 3. gain 4. demands 5. tutor

VI/

1. Mai said that the stress of the entrance examinations had made her physically ill.
- 2.Nora's mother said it broke her heart to see her daughter/Nora upset when she had failed the exam.

3. Mi told Phong that she felt stressed and tense to see that she couldn't get the perfect results.
4. Quan said that study stress had been a part of his life.
5. Phong said he (had) started experiencing symptoms of stress in grade 8.

VII/

1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. D 10. B

VIII/

1. B 2. A 3. D 3. C 5. C

IX/

1. "Rest for a while," he said.
2. "You have not done your work well," said the teacher to me.
3. "I can't explain this rule to you," said my classmate to me.
4. The teacher said to the class, "We shall discuss this subject tomorrow."
5. "Don't make such a mess in your room," his mother said.
6. "Let's go to the cinema tonight," he suggested.
7. "Explain to me how to solve this problem," said my friend to me.
8. "You may leave the room," the teacher told us.

X/

1. I don't know what to review first for the coming test.
2. Mary can't decide whether to go to the school library or (to) stay at home to do her homework.
3. Please tell me how to get to the bus station.
4. Jim told us where to find that atlas.
5. He told me when to come to the meeting.
6. The plumber told me how to fix the leak in the sink.
7. Please tell me where to meet you tomorrow morning.
8. Jim found two shirts he liked, but he had trouble deciding which one to buy

XI/

1. We should use a planner to keep track of assignments and homework.
2. When we finish each assignment, we can have a feeling of accomplishment.
3. It might be a good idea to have a quiet place to study.
4. We should also start doing homework earlier than later in the day.
5. It might help to consider joining study clubs or take part in activities after school.

TEST 2 (Unit 3)

I+II/

1. C 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. c

III/

6. A 7. c 8. A 9. B 10. B 11. c 12. B 13. B 14. D 15. D

IV/

1. Tom said that homework was a leading cause of stress.
2. Miss Hoa said that a little stress could make students work harder, but too much stress could make the opposite result.
3. Phuc said that his parents could help him decide what was important and what was optional.
4. Mr. Thanh said that parents were right to be worried about stress and their children's health.
5. Nick's father told him that it didn't matter where Nick went to college

V/

1. A 2. C 3. D 4. D 5. C

VI/

- Task 1 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T 6. F 7. T 8. T
- Task 2 1. deeper 2. hormone 3. temporary 4. puberty

VII/

1. Susan said every day she was teased and bullied and she didn't know what to do.
2. Quan told me (that) he was having a really hard time getting along with his parents.

3. Mai asked her mother if/whether she needed a tutor when she got so much trouble in maths.
4. Mi told Nick (that) she was scared to talk to other students at school, and she had never told her parents about being depressed.
5. David asked the doctor why he often slept in class although he tried hard to break his bad habit.
6. Phong said whenever he read a book, his mind started to wander after a while, and he couldn't read anymore.
7. Linda told Susan (that) her mom sometimes complained about how untidy and lazy she was.
8. Tim said (that) his stepmother hated him and she often blamed him for stealing things her friends had given her.

VIII/

1. If I were you, I would try new things, such as joining new sports clubs with your classmates.
2. You should do your homework carefully and keep assignments organized.
3. It might be a good idea to know when you have tests and revise the lessons.
4. You should have your teachers' email addresses so that you can ask for missing assignments.
5. It might help to consider writing down all assignments and test dates in your planner.

TEST 3 UNIT 3

- I.** 1. c 2. d 3. c 4. d 5. b
- II.** 1. b 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. d
- III.** 1. a 2. c 3. c 4. b 5. d 6. b 7. d 8. c
9. c 10. a
- IV.** 1. had spent 2. has asked 3. not to take 4. wanted
5. is being repaired 6. taking 7. to think 8. worked
- V.** 1. could 2. were reading 3. would travel 4. had never been
5. would do 6. hadn't gone 7. might 8. had to/ must
9. was 10. needed
- VI.** 1. adulthood 2. concentration 3. confident 4. independent 5. depressed
6. responsibilities 7. frustration 8. emotional 9. counselor 10. Organizational
- VII.** 1. a 2. b 3. d 4. c 5. c 6. d
- VIII.** 1. "I will not have enough time to finish the Job", he said.
2. When was that chocolate cake eaten by your friends?
3. My teacher asked me what the skills I concerned most were.
4. *The Little Prince* is the most interesting novel I have ever read.
5. If you don't finish your homework, you can't go out with your friend.
6. They're not sure how to operate the new system.
7. I spent 4 hours reading the first chapter of the book.
8. Tennis is not as dangerous as snowboarding.
- IX.** 1. Jimmy asked me where I had met him.
2. Jim asked his teacher when to register for the new course on Chinese.
3. Joana couldn't decide when to start her Journey.
4. The doctor said that I had to/ must stay in bed until the following Monday.
5. I have no idea who to call for help in this situation.
6. She wondered whether to tell her the truth about her misery.
7. I'm not sure what to do to help her overcome her mom's death.
8. John said he was going to work for a new company the following week.
- X.** 1. They said their daughter wanted to study abroad for a year.
2. She asked me if I had ever experienced school pressures.
3. He said he couldn't watch his favourite cartoon on Disney Channel the previous day.
4. Jane asked me if the weather was good in Shanghai in the summer.
5. She asked me what the skills that I found the most difficult to learn were.
6. She told me to bring her a cup of coffee.
7. Joana told me she would come and help me on Saturday.

8. My mom asked me when I would come back home.
9. The teacher asked me if I needed any help on that assignment.
10. Danny told Ann his friend had got engaged to a German the previous month.

TEST YOURSELF 1

I+II/

1. C 2. A 3. A 4. D 5. D

III/

6. D 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. D 11. C 12. C 13. A 14. B 15. A

IV/

16. liveable 17. cleanest 18. skyscrapers 19. cultures 20. perfect

V/

21. Paul turned up when everyone had gone home.
 22. We should think it over before we make an important decision.
 23. She always gets on (well) with the children.
 24. I don't believe a word he said; he just made up the story.
 25. Would you mind looking after my bicycle while I'm away for a while?

VI/

26. A 27. D 28. B 29. C 30. B 31. A 32. A 33. D 34. B 35. C

VII/

36. B 37. D 38. A 39. C 40. A

VIII/

41. First, visitors can visit the Institute of Oceanography, which is one of the first centers for scientific research in Indochina.
 42. They can go on to see the Marine Creature Museum with more than 80,000 sea and fresh water specimen, and living creatures in glass tanks.
 43. Next, they should go to Long Son Pagoda which is the largest pagoda in Nha Trang.
 44. Then, visitors shouldn't miss Ponagar Cham Tower which was built between the 7th and 12th century to honour the Mother of the Cham Kingdom.
 45. Finally, Chong Rocks is a famous sight in Nha Trang with large rock clusters on the beach at the foot of La San hill.

TEST YOURSELF 1

- I. 1. b 2. a 3. d 4. b 5. c

- II. 1. a 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. d

- III. 1. abandoned 2. self-discipline 3. adolescence 4. embarrassed 5. emergency
 6. sprawl 7. multicultural 8. lanterns 9. lacquerware 10. Metropolis

- IV. 1. d 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. d 6. c 7. d 8. b 9. b 10. a

- V. 1. convenience 2. responsible 3. production 4. adolescent 5. favorable
 6. attractive 7. graduation 8. empathize 9. urbanized 10. financial

- VI. 1. had to/must 2. was singing 3. to get 4. Are you traveling 5. feeling
 6. had written 7. to work 8. found 9. has become 10. is going to rain

- VII. 1. f 2. d 3. e 4. h 5. a 6. g 7. c 8. B

- VIII. 1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. b 6. c 7. a 8. d

- IX. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. c 7. b 8. a

- X. 1. The police took the wounded persons to hospital.
 2. He asked me not to leave my luggage unattended.
 3. The salary of a secretary is not as high as that of a professor./ is lower than that of a professor.
 4. He looked for someone to share his life with because he felt very miserable.
 5. I didn't realize how late it was and I went on studying till after midnight.
 6. How long have you worked on the project?

7. I am leaving now in order not to be late for work./ order that I won't be late for work.
8. New York City is the busiest city in the world.
9. Dina takes after her mother's side of the family.
10. He asked me how long I had been standing there.

UNIT 4: LIFE IN THE PAST

TEST 1 UNIT 4

I+II/

1. A 2. D 3. C 4. B 5. B

III/

6. C 7. A 8. D 9. D 10. B 11. A 12. C 13. D 14. A 15. C

IV/

1. read	2. get up	3. move	4. Put	5. make
6. quit	7. take	8. last	9. Carry	10. sell

V/

1. home	2. unique	3. houses	4. historical	5. characteristics
---------	-----------	-----------	---------------	--------------------

VI/

1. D	2. A	3. C	4. B	5. C
------	------	------	------	------

VII/

1. I wish schools weren't overcrowded.
2. I wish my school had playground equipment or extra activities.
3. I wish small children in the Mekong Delta didn't go through some foot bridges in order to get to school
4. I wish kindergarten teachers had training courses in making handmade teaching materials.
5. I wish children from poor families could go to school.

VIII/

1. With a whiteboard in the classroom, every student can take part in the lessons.
2. Mistakes which are made during guided practice can be easily erased.
3. Nowadays, smart boards provide students with an interactive learning environment.
4. Students can see more diagrams, charts, videos from the Internet.
5. Smart boards also help students to use their fingers to write directly on them.

TEST 2 (UNIT 4)

I+II/

1. B 2. B 3. D 4. D 5. A

III/

6. D 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. C 11. B 12. D 13. B 14. C 15. B

IV/

16. symbolic 17. exhibition 18. occasion 19. features 20. scholarly

V/

21. I wish the school authorities could set holidays based on local weather conditions.
22. I wish that university attracted/ could attract enough enrolments for the new school year.
23. I wish we could study the books written by famous scholars in the Ly, and Tran dynasties.
24. I wish small children learned how to swim.
25. I wish graduates from college had enough skills to meet the requirements of their jobs.

VI/

26. B	27. D	28. B	29. A	30. A	31. C	32. B	33. B	34. C	35. D
-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

VII/

36. D 37. B 38. A 39. C 40. A got engaged to a German the previous month.

TEST 3 UNIT 4

- II.** 1. a 2. b 3. b 4. d 5. c
- I.** 1. c 2. d 3. b 4. d 5. B
- III.** 1. a 2. c 3. d 4. b 5. b 6. c 7. a 8. a
9. d 10. c
- IV.** 1. be done 2. to be 3. were waiting 4. went - wouldn't be
5. were 6. smoking 7. is always leaving 8. to study
9. haven't spoken 10. arrive
- VI.** 1. wealthy 2. imagination 3. illiterate 4. physical
5. obesity 6. Unmarried 7. behaviors 8. incredible
9. seniority 10. unbelievable
- VII.** A. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
B. 6. Life today is faster than life in the past.
7. The standard of living has improved.
8. The Internet makes it easy to access information.
9. Computers and other powerful machines do some difficult jobs for us.
10. Household appliances make our lives easier at home.
- VIII.** A. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
B. 6. People didn't need extra exercise because their daily work kept their bodies running.
7. The traditional, low-income farmers, especially in Asian countries, are still in the serious situation despite the development in agriculture.
8. People nowadays are not as healthy as those in the past.
- IX.** 1. I wish my computer wasn't/ weren't out of order.
2. I wish my younger brother concentrated more on his studies.
3. I wish I had time to go to the cinema with you.
4. I wish John could come to my birthday party this weekend.
5. I wish you took me to the zoo after school.
6. I wish it wasn't/ weren't raining heavily outside.
7. I wish my favorite book wasn't/ weren't out of stock.
8. I wish I was/ were old enough to drive a car.
9. I wish they weren't having a class at the moment.
10. I wish my school organized outdoor activities.
- XI.** 1. I wish the council wasn't/ weren't demolishing that house.
2. If I was/ were good at English, I could become a tour guide.
3. "I will hold an event about skin care next month", Mary said.
4. She was given the book "The fault in our stars" as a birthday gift.
5. He wishes he could come to his brother's wedding.
6. He advised me not to spend most of my time chatting on Facebook.
7. How long have you searched for some facts in the past?
8. My mother used to cook for me.
- XII.** 1. They used to go to school by bike when they were young.
2. She started teaching her children to play piano 4 years ago.
3. I wish I could cook as well as my mom.
4. He used to have meals with his family.
5. It took me a long time to get used to living in the country.
6. My school isn't far from my home, so I go to school on foot every day.
7. I wish my sister improved her English speaking.
8. Dried candied fruit is only eaten by Vietnamese people at Tet.

UNIT 5: WONDERS OF VIET NAM

TEST 1 (UNIT 5)

I+II/

1.A2. C 3. A 4. B 5. D

III/

6. B 7. C 8. A 9. D 10. B 11. D 12. D 13. C 14. B 15. D

IV/

16. reserve 17. valleys 18. limestone 19. destinations 20. species

V/

1. rickshaw 2. fishing 3. geological 4. biodiversity
5. limestone 6. complex 7. setting 8. architectural

VI/

1. It is thought that the site of Po Nagar Cham Towers was first used for worship as early as the 2nd century AD.
2. It is believed that the original wooden structure was destroyed by the Javanese in AD 774.
3. It is said that it was replaced by a stone-and-brick temple in 784.
4. It is considered that Yang Ino Po Nagar ruled over the southern part of the Cham kingdom.
5. It is claimed that a gold sculpture in the North Tower was taken away by Khmer raiders in 918.
6. It is believed that the stone statue of the goddess Uma Mahishasuramardini was later placed in the North Tower in 965.
7. It is thought that the Central Tower was built partly of recycled bricks in the 12th century on the site of a structure dating from the 7th century.
8. It is known that the South Tower was dedicated to the god Shiva.

VII/

1. Mary suggested visiting Po Nagar Cham Towers after lunch.
2. He suggested going to the cinema that night.
3. My father suggested that I should never/ shouldn't borrow money from my friends.
4. Nick suggested that the stranger shouldn't write anything on the walls of the cavern.
5. I suggested watching her performance again.

VIII.

1. It is believed that the ancient Champa dynasties built many elaborate temples and shrines.
2. It is claimed that the Cham towers in Binh Dinh province are the biggest in Southeast Asia.
3. It is thought that the Cham towers are located in the Do Ban Citadel.
4. It is considered that the Binh Dinh towers are a harmonious combination of architectural art from the Champa and Khmer cultures.
5. It is said that the three magnificent Duong Long Towers were built during the 12th and 13th centuries in Tay Son district.

IX/

1. B 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. C

X/

1. The Thang Long Imperial Citadel was first built in Ha Noi during the Ly Dynasty.
2. It was considered the capital for seven centuries from the Ly Dynasty to the Trinh Lords.
3. It was listed as a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 2010.
4. The royal palaces and most structures in the complex were in bad condition.
5. The relics from its ruined foundations are on display at the museum.

TEST 2 (UNIT 5)

I+II/

1.C2. D 3. B 4. C 5. C

III/

6.D 7.B 8. A 9. B 10. C 11. D 12. B 13.B 14.C15.A

IV/

16. ecological 17. breathtaking 18. deep 19. unique 20. rich

V/

21. Tom suggested giving Mi the answer by the end of the week.
22. Phong suggested that Nick should ask his parents for advice.
23. Nick's mother suggested that he should have his haircut.
24. The doctor suggested that Veronica should rest for a few days.
25. Phong's mother suggested he should apologize to his teacher for being late.

VI

1. D 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B

VII/ Task 1

1. They can be found alongside the mountain up to the peak.
2. It lasts from the middle of the first lunar month to the middle of the third one (or from February to April).
3. They pray for happiness and prosperity in the coming year.
4. People can take part in a wide range of traditional cultural activities.
5. They can meet and form romances.

VIII/

- Task 1. I T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. T

Task 2

1. It takes around 4 hours.
2. It was recognized by UNESCO as a World Heritage Site in 1994 and in 2000.
3. It is that 1,969 limestone islands of various shapes, sizes, and in different green and amazing colours rise above the sea level in an area of more than 1,500 square kilometers.
4. No, there isn't. There is no best time because Ha Long Bay is attractive and beautiful throughout the four seasons.
5. We must visit the amazing Surprise Cave, the floating fishing village, and see how the locals live.
6. It is Vietnamese people, delicious food, fresh air all day, and sunrise at the bay.

IX.

1. Tam Coc - Bich Dong which belongs to Trang An Scenic Landscape Complex is well known for its poetic and inspirational natural scenery.
2. It is the second nicest cavern in Viet Nam after Huong Tich Cavern.
3. Bich Dong Pagoda was built in the Le Dynasty in Bich Dong Cavern, whose name means "Green Pearl Cavern".
4. Tam Coc Cavern consists of Ca cave, Hai cave and Ba cave, all of which offer beauty and mystery to tourists.
5. Visiting Tam Coc Cavern, tourists feel like getting lost in such a hidden fairy site.
6. In brief, it is an ideal ecological spot for lovers of nature.

TEST 3 UNIT 5

- I.** 1. a 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. c
- II.** 1. d 2. d 3. b 4. c 5. a
- III.** 1. a 2. c 3. d 4. b 5. d 6. c 7. a 8. b 9. d 10. a
- IV.** 1. to preserve 2. dealing 3. telling 4. going - witnessing
5. booking 6. to lack 7. visiting 8. to send
9. putting 10. to pay
- V.** 1. have been built 2. was reported 3. go 4. took
5. is expected 6. was discovered 7. would see 8. would buy
9. were travelling 10. sitting
- VI.** 1. recognition 2. geological 3. picturesque 4. administrative
5. contestant 6. astounding 7. Religious 8. defensive
9. sightseers 10. location
- VII.** 1. b 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. a 6. d 7. b 8. c
- VIII.** A. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F 6. T
B. 7. It's about 69km.

8. My Son used to be a site of religious ceremony for kings of the ruling dynasties of Champa, as well as a burial place for Cham royalty and national heroes.
9. There are 103 Cham vestiges in My Son.
10. My Son was recognized as a World Heritage Site by UNESCO in 1999.
- IX.** 1. measurements 2. regarded 3. twice 4. wonders
5. formations 6. capacity 7. unknown 8. attempt
- X.** 1. b 2. a 3. c 4. d 5. a 6. b
- XI.** 1. I suggest taking a course in photography.
2. I suggest the government should pass a law on banning deforestation.
3. We suggest students from universities should participate more in social work.
4. My classmates suggest using bus and bicycle to go to school.
5. His father suggested he should read more books about environmental issues.
6. They suggest teachers should provide students with knowledge on historical facts.
7. People suggest exhaust fumes from vehicles should be reduced.
8. My mom suggested keeping the surroundings clean and green.
9. I suggest visitors should stop littering in Phong Nha Cave.
10. My friends suggest visiting the Royal Citadel when being in Hue.
- XII.** 1. It is expected that more than two million Muslim pilgrims from all over the world head to Mecca this year.
2. It is believed that many more people will die of skin cancer over the next ten years.
3. It is being thought that drugs are very dangerous.
4. It has been reported that Bitexco Tower is the tallest skyscraper in Vietnam.
5. It is thought that the first temple existed during the reign of Le Thanh Tong in the 15th century.
6. It is known that Phong Nha Cave was found in the 16th century by Cham people.
7. It is claimed that the site of the Perfume Pagoda was discovered over 2000 years ago.
8. It was said that the government were conducting a project to investigate the harmful effects of air pollution.
9. It was thought that he went to a local restaurant with his girlfriend.
10. It has been suggested that bright children should take their exams early.
- XIV.** 1. Sara is considered to be one of the best students in her school.
2. I wish she shared memories of her trip with me.
3. If Emily didn't have to work part-time on Saturday, she could accompany her best friend to the contest.
4. I suggest surfing the net for the location of Ninh Binh Province.
5. We are going to have the kitchen redecorated next month.
6. It is hoped that cable cars construction to Son Doong Cave will be stopped.
7. My teacher asked me when I was going to submit my research paper.
8. When you come inside you should take off your coat and hat.
9. When will the flight for your trip to Vietnam be booked?
10. I find the news about ancient towns interesting.

UNIT 6: VIET NAM: THEN AND NOW

TEST 1 (UNIT 6)

I+II/

1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. D

III/

1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. D 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. C

IV/

1. soldiers 2. demand 3. fashion A. footwear 5. thickness

V/

21. It is essential that family members care for each other.
22. We are aware that families are the place where we learn values, skills, and behavior.
23. It is certain that parents should guide their children into the world outside the home.
24. We are conscious that strong families have a sense of loyalty and devotion toward family members.
25. It is sure that the family is a place of shelter for individual family members.

VI/

26. C 27. B 28. B 29. C 30. D 31. D 32. A 33. B 34. C 35. A

VII/

36. A 37. D 38. C 39. B 40. D

VIII/

41. We should have the positive attitude towards other family members.
42. We should treat other family members like our best friends.
43. It is necessary for you to show love in small ways every day.
44. We should praise the accomplishments and strengths of other family members.
45. We should remember and celebrate birthdays of other members in an extended family.

TEST 2 (Unit 6)

I+II/

1. D 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A

III/

6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. C 11. D 12. B 13. D 14. C 15. B

IV/

16. occasion 17. respect 18. spirit 19. custom 20. blossoms

V/

21. We are conscious that the family becomes a source of encouragement in times of personal success or defeat.
22. It is sure that each family needs its own special set of rules and guidelines.
23. We are convinced that love requires constant daily effort by each family member.
24. It is clear that laughing together builds up a family but laughing at each other divides a family.
25. We are pleased that children are allowed to have a voice in decision making in the family.

VI

/26. A 27. A 28. C 29. B 30. C 31. D 32. D 33. B 34. C 35. B

VII/

36. B 37. D 38. A 39. C 40. D

VIII/

41. It is important for you to be honest to say what you are thinking.
42. You should spend time with other members in order to have close relationships.
43. We should accept the differences between family members, and we should look for the common interests.
44. It is certain that you should avoid making unpleasant comments toward other members.
45. Instead of becoming the center of attention in the family, we should show kindness and interests to others. ;

TEST 3 UNIT 6

- I.** 1. a 2. b 3. c 4. b 5. a
- II.** 1. b 2. a 3. b 4. d 5. c
- III.** 1. a 2. c 3. b 4. b 5. c 6. a 7. d 8. c 9. b 10. a
- IV.** 1. to work/ working 2. worrying 3. were worn 4. hadn't thought
5. went 6. has experienced 7. to report 8. increases
9. could come 10. had met
- V.** 1. had ended 2. had they been 3. had read 4. Had you seen
5. hadn't had 6. had mosdy traveled 7. Had you learnt 8. had left

9. hadn't cleaned 10. hadn't paid
- VI.** 1. had lived - moved 2. downloaded - had made
4. arrived - had destroyed 5. hadn't stood – adopted
7. came - had forgotten 8. had gone - was
10. had driven - arrived
- VII.** 1. tolerant 2. cooperative 3. sympathetic 4. obedient
5. exporter 6. envious 7. suburban 8. private
9. astonishment 10. relieved
- VIII.** 1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. c 6. b 7. d 8. a
- IX. A.** 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T 6. T
B. 7. Lifestyles have changed significantly for the last century.
8. The friendliness, resilience, and determination are characteristics that have not changed.
- X.** 1. b 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. c 6. d
- XI.** 2. I was delighted to learn that I had been promoted.
3. It was stupid of him to press the emergency button.
4. It is necessary to have interests outside work.
5. It was very generous of John to give them £100.
6. They were astonished to see the driver was a six-year-old boy.
7. It was very kind of you to visit me in hospital.
8. It is very important for athletes to be in good health.
9. We're sorry to hear that your father's in hospital again.
10. It was very rude of him to make that remark.
- XII.** 1. He was confident to say that he was the best student in his school.
2. There has been a considerable change in our lifestyle since the introduction of Western culture.
3. I am excited to learn that I can come to visit my friend in Phu Yen next month.
4. It is necessary to teach those children about how Vietnam has transformed itself.
5. It was rude of her to shout at his face in the department store.
6. My father was pleased to learn that I had passed the entrance exam to high school.
7. As soon as I came to the party, everybody had gone home.
8. It is unsafe to visit this country during summer vacation.
9. The number of people learning English has increased dramatically.
10. After Phong had worked hard for a week, he went to the beach.
- XIII.** 1. It was brave of him to tell her what he thought about her.
2. I am sorry to hear your bad news.
3. The number of people using public transport has dropped slightly.
4. I am busy revising for exams at the moment.
5. As there was an increased demand for travel, the government decided to invest in building the very first metro system.
6. If I knew much about historical events, I could help her with her history homework.
7. I have never heard about the tram system in Hanoi before.
8. It took the firefighters two hours to release the driver from the wreckage.
9. The president was taken to the hospital for an emergency operation.
10. After I had saved my document, the computer crashed.

TEST YOURSELF 2

I+II/

1. A 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. D

III/

6. C 7. C 8. D 9. B 10. B 11. C 12. B 13. B 14. A 15. D

IV/

16. space 17. attraction 18. generations Vi. fun 20. powers

V/

21. It is thought that Hung Thanh Tower in Quy Nhon was built during Khmer occupations in Champa in the 13th century.

22. It is said that the edges of the roofs of Canh Tien Tower were built of sandstone.

23. It is believed that Binh Lam Tower was built between the end of the 10th century with the spectacular and powerful architecture style.

24. It is claimed that symmetrical style motifs were carved directly into Cham bricks in Binh Lam Tower.

25. It is considered that Silver Tower was built between the end of 11th and the beginning of the 12th century on a hill of Tuy Phuoc District.

VI/

26. A 27. C 28. B 29. C 30. D 31. B 32. A 33. D 34. A 35. C

VII/

36. C 37. A 38. D 39. B 40. B

TEST YOURSELF 2

I. 1. c 2. a 3. b 4. d 5. c

II. 1. a 2. d 3. d 4. b 5. c

III. 1. pilgrim 2. thatched 3. relieved 4. Citadel
5. picturesque 6. facilities 7. obesity 8. underpass
9. pedestrian 10. spectacular

IV. 1. a 2. b 3. a 4. b 5. c 6. c 7. d 8. a 9. d 10. c

V. 1. had been 2. is growing 3. was claimed 4. throw
5. were doing – went 6. earned 7. hasn't set 8. had lived
9. travelling 10. to concentrate

VI. 1. illiteracy 2. privacy 3. entertainment 4. geologist
5. sympathize 6. recognizable 7. exhibitions 8. cooperation
9. disobedient 10. tolerance

VII. 1. A (do) 2. A (could) 3. D (late) 4. D (visiting) 5. A (have)
6. A (his dropping) 7. C (considerably) 8. A (turned) 9. B (hard) 10. C (cooking)

VIII. 1. g 2. f 3. e 4. a 5. b 6. c 7. d 8. h

IX. 1. d 2. b 3. c 4. a 5. b 6. d 7. c 8. b

X. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. c 7. a 8. b

XI. 1. If I were you, I would use less paper to protect the environment.
2. The number of skyscrapers built in Hanoi has increased sharply this year.
3. What about visiting Moc Chau to learn about Thai and H'mong people?
4. It is believed that touching the head of a Buddha statue is a sign of disrespect.
5. I wish I could get my visa extended.
6. My teacher told me to follow his/ her instructions if I wanted to pass that module.
7. As soon as he arrived at the airport, they had been on board.
8. When did you possess that Chanel bag?
9. She asked me why she had to conduct that research.
10. It is necessary for him to talk to psychologist about his current situation.

KEYS GRAMMAR

UNIT 1: LOCAL ENVIRONMENT

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng:

1. My mother used to tell me stories _____ I went to bed.
A. since B. until C. before
2. You better take the keys _____ I'm not out.
A. in case B. since C. after
3. My mother like eating fried chicken _____ it's very bad for his health.

- A.because B.although C.when
- 4.Yesterday, Jim was playing the piano _____ his sister was playing the flute
A.as B.although C.while
- 5.You shouldn't spend too much on computer _____ it is harmful to your eyes.
A.as B.when C.although
- 6.I will phone you _____ I get there.
A.while B.as soon as C.until
- 7.The scientist usually works in his lab _____ the sun sets.
A.until B.as soon as C.although
- 8._____you promise not to tell lies again, I won't forgive you.
A.If B.Even If **C.Unless**
- 9._____her legs were hurt, she made attempt to finish the running track.
A.Even If B.As if C. even though
- 10.She talked _____ she witnessed the accident. But in fact she knew nothing.
A.as if B.even though C.even If
- 11.I didn't finish my home work _____ I was seriously ill yesterday.
A.when B.though **C.since**
- 12.James decided to save money from now _____ he has enough money to travel this summer
A.so that B.through C.when
- 13._____ we have been friends for only one year, we deeply understand each other.
A.If **B.Though** C.Once
14. Mr Smith doesn't like dogs, _____ his wife love them.
A.when B.so that **C.whereas**
- 15.I was cycling home yesterday _____ I saw Jim standing near the fountain.
A.when B.while C.since

Bài 2: Hoàn thành những câu sau đây bằng những liên từ cho sẵn.

since	although	while	unless	before
as though	when	as long as	because	in case

- 1.-g 2.-a 3. f 4.-c
5.b 6 - h 7.-e 8.-d

- Bài 4: Nối 2 câu đơn đã cho thành câu ghép, sử dụng liên từ thích hợp.**
1. Jim was absent from class yesterday because/ since/ as he was suffering from a bad cold.
 2. They decided to move the house so that they don't have to travel a long distance to work.
 3. Mary heard her fingers yesterday when she was repairing dinner.
 4. At 4 pm yesterday, my mother was cleaning the house while I was looking after my younger brother.
 5. They decided to go on an excursion because they want to get away from work stress.
 6. My father taught me how to use the computer before I didn't know how to use it.
 7. I will call you as soon as I arrive at the station.

Keys:

1.although/ though/ even though	2.Unless	3.although/ though/ even though
4.because/as/since	3.although/ though/ even though	6.If
7.By	8.If	9.unless
10. in case	11.although/ though/ even though	12.even if
13.Unless	14.when	15.if

Bài 6: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng:

- 1.They have turned (**down** / up) Jim's application for the job.
- 2.You may have to deal(**with**/ about) many problem in the workplace.
- 3.Small birds mainly live (**on**/off) insects.
- 4.When does the plane take (**off**/ up) ?
- 5.Why did you decide to take (on/**up**) skiing ?
- 6.Remember to warm (**up**/down) carefully before you play sports.
- 7.There's no need to dress (**up** / down). It is just an informal party.
- 8.Have you work (**out** / in) the solution yet ?
- 9.Oops, I think we're run out (**of**/on) petrol.
- 10.Jim seems not to get (**on**/off) well with his classmates.
- 11.My husband has decided to set (**up**/down) a business on his own.
- 12.Do you think Jame will find (**out**/ up) the truth ?
- 13.Does Jim have many friends to count (**on**/off) in difficult time ?
- 14.Yesterday, my uncle dropped (to/**by**)my house to the surprise of everyone.
- 15.Were you brought (**up**/in) by your grandparents ?

Bài 7: Điền một từ thích hợp để hoàn thành các câu dưới đây:

- 1.James is quite easy- going. He can get on well with many types of people.
- 2.Peter has been absent from school for two weeks due to his illness. It may be difficult for him to catch up with his classmates.
- 3.Did you watch the film last night? Do you know how the villain got back on the hero ?
- 4.Mr Smith decided to give up smoking because the doctor warned him of getting lung cancer.
- 5.He could deal with all kinds of people because it was part of his job as a receptionist.
- 6.Jim was sad because Jane turned down his invitation to the prom.
- 7.It is important to cut down on sugar consumption every day.
- 8.It's time you have to face up to these problems on your own.
- 9.I look forward to hearing from you soon.
- 10.Sometimes I look back on my childhood and realize how happy I was as a kid.

Bài 8: Đánh dấu (V) trước câu đúng, đánh dấu (x) trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng.

- | | |
|-------------|---|
| <u>out</u> | We have already worked <u>up</u> a new way of doing it. |
| <u>up</u> | 2.Jim wants to be a successful writer when he grows <u>out</u> . |
| <u>V</u> | 3.We are looking forward to hearing from you soon. |
| <u>with</u> | 4.You can keep up <u>to</u> all the changes in technology nowadays. |
| <u>down</u> | 5. The nearby shop will be closed <u>up</u> next month. |
| <u>of</u> | 6.The team scored another goal and made sure <u>about</u> championship. |
| <u>out</u> | 7.Last year a research on the consequences of water pollution was carried <u>on</u> . |
| <u>V</u> | 8.Jim has come up with a brilliant idea to tackle the problem. |

___ rid of ___

9. Have you ever considered getting **rid** of your bad habits ?

___ look ___

10. The teacher asked us to **see** through the textbook before she continued.

Bài 9: Hoàn thành các câu sau bằng những cụm động từ cho sẵn.

cut down on	deal with	hold on	take up	count on
put up with	turn down	come down with	bring out	check up on

1. The singer will **bring out** a new album this year.
2. Peter is very reliable. You can **count on** him.
3. You should **cut** your essay down to 500 words.
4. Jim is depressed as he has been **turn down** by five companies so far.
5. I can't **put up with** such disturbing noise any time.
6. My mother is always **telling off** me.
7. Mr. Smith has **taken up** golf.
8. Are you tired of **dealing with** complaints from your customers.
9. How are you now ? I heard that you **came down with flu** last week.
- 10 **Hold on!** I think we've got lost. This isn't the right road.

BÀI TẬP NÂNG CAO TỔNG HỢP.

Bài 10: Dựa vào từ cho trước và thêm liên từ thích hợp để tạo thành câu phức.

1. Jane plays the piano extremely well although she is very young.
2. Josh wants to earn more money so he is applying for another job now.
3. My mother had cooked me breakfast before she went to work.
4. I prefer staying at home to going out because I do not like socializing.
5. Everyone enjoyed the party last night although the food was not so good.
6. Jim can not catch up with his classmates he often plays truant.
7. Peter studies very hard so that he can get high scores.
8. Many of my friends enjoy going shopping whereas I don't like this.

Bài 11: Thay thế những động từ in nghiêng trong câu bằng một cụm động từ thích hợp.

1. I don't like Josh because he often boasts <i>about</i> his wealth.	<i>show off</i>
2. Last month many people in my neighbor <i>had</i> chickenpox.	<i>came down with</i>
3. you should <i>reduce</i> the amount you salt in your daily meal.	<i>cut down on</i>
4. It's you <i>confronted</i> your fear and moved on.	<i>face up with</i>
5. Yesterday an old friend of mine <i>visited</i> your family.	<i>drop in</i>
6. Mary decided to <i>join</i> the cooking contest.	<i>go in for</i>
7. I didn't want to go with him, so I <i>rejected</i> his invitation.	<i>turn down</i>
8. They are a well- matched couple and they always <i>agree</i> with each other.	<i>go along with</i>
9. When did you <i>start</i> your new hobby ?	<i>take up</i>
10. The rain <i>continued</i> all the morning.	<i>kept up</i>

Bài 12. Hoàn thành các câu dưới đây bằng cách điền từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống.

1. Peter always look **up to** his senior colleagues.
2. Mary is **going in for** a singing competition.
3. Nothing can **make up for** the loss of my cat.
4. Jim didn't work yesterday because he came **down with** flu.
5. My mother always reminds me to stay **away from** bad people.
6. As a child I used to wait **up for** the present from Santa Clause.
7. I can't put **up with** his selfishness any more.
8. They argue a lot. They seem to never **get on with** each other.
9. Last year she got **through with** an operation.
10. Last week we got **rid of** all the old furniture and bought new one.

Bài 13: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong câu và viết lại câu đúng.

Because 1. **Although** she didn't warm up carefully before running, her leg was hurt during the

race.

- because** 2. Everyone dressed up **though** they wanted to be the King or Queen of the prom.
- Although** 3. **Since** I am really interested in lacquerware, I rarely buy one for me.
- Although** 4. **As though** my brother and I don't get on well, we still care about the other.
- If** 5. What would you do **unless** you won a lottery?
- up to** 6. Mr. Smith is renowned artisan. Everyone looks **down on** him.
- When** 7. **While** I came home, my cat was sleeping on the sofa.
- Although** 8. Because Peter cheated on me, I wouldn't get back on him.

Bài 14: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng:

1. A. up	B. down	C. on	D. off
2. A. so	B. so that	C. since	D. though
3. A. so	B. so that	C. since	D. though
4. A. After	B. Because	C. At last	D. While
5. A. turned down	B. went in for	C. passed down	D. brought out
6. A. After	B. Before	C. At last	D. While
7. A. up to	B. down on	C. forward to	D. forward on

Bài 15: Đọc bài đọc sau và trả lời câu hỏi.

Vietnam's Youngest Artisan

1. When was Nguyen Tran Hiep recognized as the Vietnam's Youngest Artisan?
At the age of 37
2. Did he easily succeed in developing his fine-art furniture workshop?
No, he didn't
3. How did Hiep categorize his customers?
He categorized his customers into two types: foreign tourist and traders from China.
4. What kinds of products does his workshop often produce for foreigners?
His workshop often produces small handicrafts and souvenirs, such as small animals, painting, tea trays, figurines and rasaries.
5. How many employees are there in Hiep Thang Fine arts Cooperative?
28 employees
6. What was made by Nguyen Tran Hiep to celebrate the 80th anniversary of the founding of the Ho Chi Minh Communist Youth Union?
Nguyen Tran Hiep's best works is "Bat Long vong quang phat"

UNIT 2: CITY LIFE

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1:

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. faster | 5. better | 9. slower | 13. more beautifully |
| 2. more populous | 6. futher | 10. worse | 14. more polluted |
| 3. more densely | 7. happier | 11. better | 15. more helpful |
| 4. more reliable | 8. healthier | 12. more familiar | |

Bài 2

Keys

- | | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. faster | 2. more poorly | 3. less | 4. harder | 5. more brightly |
| 6. more severe | 7. higher | 8. more cleverly | 9. more smoothly | 10. more fluently |

Bài 3:

- | | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| 1. most intelligent | 2. more convenient | 3. the most polluted | 4. more spacious | 5. the most stunning |
| 6. the tallest | 7. better | 8. the most inspiring | 9. better | 10. the most expensive |

Bài 4:

1. My old house is smaller than the current one.
2. He was expected to perform worse than he did.
3. This time Mike's brother run more slowly than him.
4. I think Jim will have a lower position in your company than you.
5. I decorated my cake less beautifully than Jane did.
6. Last year Peter invested a small amount of money on his business than this year.
7. Jim's computer is cheaper than mine.
8. Playing computer games is more time-consuming than playing sports.

Bài 5:

1. Residents of Ha Noi City are more traditional than residents of Ho Chi Minh City.
2. Residents of Ho Chi Minh City are more dynamic than residents of Ha Noi city.
3. Ho Chi Minh city is more populous than Ha Noi city.
4. Ha Noi city is larger than Ho Chi Minh city.
5. Ho Chi Minh city is smaller than Ha Noi city.
6. Ha Noi city is less densely-populated than Ho Chi Minh city.
7. Ho Chi Minh city is more densely-populated than Ha Noi city.
8. In witer, It is colder in Ha Noi than Ho Chi Minh city.
9. In winter, it is warmer in Ho Chi Minh than in Ha Noi.

Bài 6: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng. (A,B,C)

1. Who does Jim take _____ ?

A. after	B. up	C. in
----------	-------	-------

2. I am waiting _____ the result of the test.

A. after	B. for	C. on
----------	--------	-------

3. They haven't agreed _____ what make of car they would buy.

A. on	B. in	C. with
-------	-------	---------

4. "Who did you run _____ yesterday?" "It was my old teacher."

A. on	B. out of	C. into
-------	-----------	---------

5. If we don't conserve the natural gas, it will soon be used _____ ?

A. up	B. off	C. to
-------	--------	-------

6. Are you still looking _____ a job or have you already got one?

A. after	B. up	C. for
----------	-------	--------

7. After years of being badly treated, James doesn't believe _____ the good things in life any more.

A. on	B. in	C. about
-------	-------	----------

8. Why did you stay _____ so late last night?

A. in	B. up	C. on
-------	-------	-------

9. When Mr. Brown went on a business trip, Mrs. Smith took _____ his work.

A. over	B. up	C. off
---------	-------	--------

10. Jim promised to pick me _____ from the airport.

A. over	B. up	C. on
---------	-------	-------

11. Peter took _____ his rain coat before he came in.

A. over	B. up	C. off
---------	-------	--------

12. You mustn't believe him. He made _____ the whole story which was completely wrong.

A. over	B. up	C. on
---------	-------	-------

13. Many of my friends came to the airport to see me _____.

A. over	B. up	C. off
---------	-------	--------

14. The teacher told us to put _____ interesting details of the presentation.

A. up	B. down	C. away
-------	---------	---------

15. It is the shared mind that keeps us _____.

A.up	B.together	C.with
------	------------	--------

Bài 7: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng:

1. My mother told me to (**put**/get) on warm clothes before I went out.
2. Jim really (**got**/put) me down when he forgot my birthday.
3. My father never (**tells**/drops) me off but my mother is always shouting at me.
4. I couldn't believe she (**turned**/got) down my invitation for the second time.
5. My mother often lets me (**look**/take) after my younger brother.
6. "Why did she (**break**/stay) up with you?" "She said I didn't care much about her".
7. Please (**drop**/tell) me off in front of the theater.
8. We've been (**saving**/looking) up to travel to New York this summer.
9. Have you (take/**put**) out clean towels for the guests?
10. (**Take**/Dress) off your rain coat before you come in.
11. I remember (**paying**/looking) Jim back but he kept asking me for his money.
12. Jim's poor test results (**got**/looked) his parents down.
13. My grandmother (died/**passed**) away before I was born.
14. I have many tasks to (**attend**/look) to.
15. Who does this bag (**belong**/own) to?

Bài 8. Hoàn thành các câu dưới đây bằng cách điền tiểu từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống.

1. We will set **off** for Tokyo in the next few hours.
2. Everyone says that Jim takes **after** his father but I think he is more like his mother.
3. Who will take **over** your position when you are on parental leave?
4. There are four of us so Peter cuts the cake **into** four pieces.
5. I am going to buy a new bike, so I put my old one **away**.
6. Remember to put the trash **out** before the garbage truck comes.
7. You must take **off** your hat before you come into a temple.
8. I hate the way my manager shuts me **up** when she disagrees with me.
9. What are you looking **for**? My car keys.
10. Watch **out** for the dog. Everyone says that it is a fierce dog.

Bài 9. Đánh dấu[V] trước câu đúng, đánh dấu[X] trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng.

1. **take after you** Your son doesn't take you after at all.
2. **use up the...** I think we will use the natural resources up in the near future.
3. **agree with me** Jim agreed me with when I said he needed to improve his living condition.
4. **broke up** Mary and Peter broke them up after two months dating.
5. **V** I rarely put down what the teacher says but I can remember most of her words.
6. **V** The taxi driver dropped me off in front of the City Council building.
7. **clear up your ...** You should clear your room up before mom comes back.
8. **run in to my...** I was happy that I run my old teacher into yesterday.
9. **show off her** Mary is always showing her jewelry off.
10. **on** Both of us agreed with Jane's opinion about our plan.

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 10: Dựa vào từ cho trước viết thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. Yesterday / the plane / lake / take / off / early / than / I expect.
Yesterday the plane took off earlier than I expected
2. My / mother / look / after / us / carefully / than / my father.
My mother looks after us more carefully than my father.
3. They / cut / the / big / cake / into / small / parts / than / I / think
They cut the big cake into smaller parts than I thought.
4. My / sister / even / tell / me / off / often / than / my / mother / do.

My sister even tell me off more often than my mother does.

5. Who / see / you / off / yesterday ?

Who did you see off yesterday?

6. It / cold / today / so / I / put / on / warm / clothes / than / usual.

It is cold today so I put on warmer clothes than usual.

7. Yesterday / my mother / pick / me / up / late / than / usual.

Yesterday my father picked me up later than usual.

8. You / be / pretty / girl / I / ever / know.

You are the prettiest girl I have ever known

9. Unless / you / listen / attentively / to / you / teacher, you / not / catch / up / with / your friends.

Unless you listen attentively to your teacher, you will not catch up with your friends

10. By far, "The Little Prince" / be / my / favorite / book.

By far, "The Little Prince" is my most favourite book.

Bài 11: Hoàn thành các câu sau, sử dụng dạng so sánh của các trạng từ hoặc tính từ cho sẵn.

ancient	polluted	spacious	fast
populous	densely	tranquil	well

1. I prefer living in the countryside to living in big cities as the countryside is **more tranquil**

I really enjoy peaceful moments of life.

2. Although the cities are **more polluted** than the countryside, there are more recreational activities that I really enjoy in the cities.

3. I can't believe this vase is more than 100 years old. It is much **more ancient** than I thought.

4. The city is always **more densely** populated than the countryside.

5. My town is much **more populous** than it was ten years ago. I remember there used to be only several houses in large areas.

6. Houses in the rural area are **more spacious** than those in the urban areas.

7. Young people often **better** adjust to changes than the old.

8. The number of skyscrapers in the city is growing **faster** than ever before.

Bài 12: Hoàn thành những câu sau bằng cụm động từ thích hợp.

pay back	get down	believe in	watch out	tell off
pull out	see off	agree with	save up	make up

1. I have seen a lot of people burst into tears when they **see off** their friends and family.

2. Do you **agree with** me that didn't try hard enough?

3. Has your teacher ever **told** you **off**? No, she hasn't. She is a nice teacher.

4. Last week I borrowed Tom \$50 to buy a book but I **haven't paid** him yet.

5. My boyfriend walked towards me and then he **pulled out** a small gift.

6. I never **believed in** ghosts but my brother is always scared of them.

7. **Watch out!** There is a car coming.

8. I hate the way Peter tells lies and **makes up** stories to cheat people.

9. Have you **saved up** enough to buy a new car?

10. I promised my mother not to **get** her **down**, so I tried my best to get high scores.

Bài 13: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng:

Many people who are close to their retirement want to move to the countryside to enjoy the rest of their life. It is widely believed that life in the rural areas are (1) _____

than that in the city. The countryside is _____ than the city and people's health will improve.

(3) _____, city folks have warned people about the potential risks of living in the rural areas. Life in the countryside may not be blissfully calm as expected, even tougher. For example, rural houses are

(4) _____ and people living in it. (5) _____, people may also (6) _____ up to the lack of health care service. The vulnerable old people can't be (7) _____ treated in the countryside than in the city. For those who have spent most of their life working and living in urban areas, they may not be able to

(8) _____ the boredom and lack of facilities in the rural areas.

1. A. more peaceful	B. more peacefully	C. more noisy	D. more noisily
2. A. less polluted	B. more polluted	C. less pollute	D. more pollute
3. A. However	B. But	C. Therefore	D. When
4. A. much weaker	B. more weaker	C. less weaker	D. more weakly

5.A.However	B.Besides	C.Whereas	D.Therefore
6.A.look	B.make	C.face	D.take
7.A.well	B.more better	C.best	D.better
8.A.come down with	B.put up with	C.work out	D.agree on

Bài 14:

- 1.Ng
- 2.F.
- 3.T
- 4.F
- 5.Ng
- 6.T

UNIT 3

BÀI 1

- A** My father always says that he (is/was) very proud of me
12. Mary told me she (will/would) visit me this summer
13. Jim wonders whether Jane (liked/ likes) him or not
14. My teacher (says/said) that we had to finish our assignment on time
15. They told me that the (are/ were) going to move their house the following month.
16. My sister said she (can/ could) win the competition if she tried her best.
17. I told Jim that he (is/ was) the most intelligent person I knew.
18. The mechanic said that it (cost/ costs) up to \$50 to fix my car.
19. The (say/ said) that they would help me if they had free time.
20. Jim said that he (has just got / hadjustgot) a new bike.

Giải thích:

- Nếu động từ giới thiệu ở thì hiện tại (say/tell) thì động từ trong câu gián tiếp giữ nguyên thì trong câu trực tiếp.
- Nếu động từ giới thiệu ở thì quá khứ (said/told) thì động từ trong câu gián tiếp cần lùi từ các thì hiện tại (ở câu trực tiếp) sang các thì quá khứ (ở câu gián tiếp), từ thì quá khứ sang thì quá khứ hoàn thành.

Bài 2 Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng:

11. Jim said to me: " They will build a new bridge across this river this year".
- D. Jim said to me that they will build a new bridge across this river this year.
- E. Jim said to me that they would build a new bridge across this river this year.
- F. Jim said to me that they would build a new across that river that year.**

Giải thích: do động từ tường thuật ở dạng quá khứ là " sai" nên "will" (trong câu trực tiếp) chuyển thành "would" (trong câu gián tiếp), "this" chuyển thành "that".

12. My mother often tells me : ' You need to take care of yourself".
- D. My mother often tells me that I need to take care of yourself.
- E. My mother often tells me that I need to take care of herself
- F. My mother often tells me that I need to take care of myself**

Giải thích: Do động từ tường thuật ở thì hiện tại " says" nên không có sự thay đổi về thì ở câu trực tiếp và câu gián tiếp, ngôi thứ hai " yourself" chuyển thành ngôi thứ nhất "myself".

13. Peter informed me : " They canceled the meeting yesterday".
- D. Peter informed me that they canceled the meeting yesterday.
- E. Peter informed me that they had canceled the meeting yesterday.
- F. Peter informed me that they had canceled the meeting the day before.**
14. Peter and Jane said to me: ' Our wedding will be held next week".
- D. Peter and Jane said to me that my wedding would be held next week.
- E. Peter and Jane said to me that their wedding would be held the next week.
- F. Peter and Jane said to me that their wedding would be held the following week.**
15. I told him: ' I am busy this week so I can't come to your party."
- D. I told him that I was busy this week so I can't come to my party.
- E. I told him that I was busy that week so I couldn't come to my party

F. I told him that I was busy that week so I couldn't come to his party.

16. The doctor said: 'You will suffer from diabetes if you don't reduce sugar in your daily meals'

D. The doctor said I would suffer from diabetes if I didn't reduce sugar in my daily meals

E. The doctor said I would suffer from diabetes if I don't reduce sugar in my daily meals

F. The doctor said I suffered from diabetes if I didn't reduce sugar in my daily meals.

17. Peter asked me: "would you go to the prom with me?"

D. Peter asked me if I would go to the prom with me.

E. Peter asked me whether I would go to the prom with him

F. Peter asked me whether would I go to the prom with him

18. My father asked me: "where are you going?"

D. My father asked me where was I going.

E. My father asked me where you were going

F. My father asked me where I was going.

19. Oliver asked me: "What will you do if you have a day off?"

D. Oliver asked me what would I do if I have a day off.

E. Oliver asked me what I would do if I had a day off

F. Oliver asked me what would I do if I have a day off.

20. My brother asked me: "How can I open this box?"

D. My brother asked me how I could open that box.

E. My brother asked me how to open that box.

F. My brother asked me how he could open this box.

Giải thích: câu gián tiếp với từ để hỏi "how", theo sau bởi một động từ nguyên thể có "to".

Bài 3: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong các câu sau và sửa lại cho đúng.

11. My mother asked me if I could help her do gardening tomorrow. ->the next day/ the following day.

Giải thích: trạng từ thời gian "tomorrow" ở câu trực tiếp chuyển về "the next day/the following day" ở câu gián tiếp.

12. Jim wondered if to buy a new radio or fix his old one. ->whether

Giải thích: để tường thuật lại câu hỏi Yes/No question, ta dùng cấu trúc "Whether+ to V"

13. Peter asked me was I free that weeked. ->IF I was

Giải thích: câu hỏi khi chuyển về dạng gián tiếp không đảo trợ động từ lên trước chủ ngữ.

14. I wanted to know who was the winner of that competition.-> who the winner of that competition was.

Giải thích: câu hỏi khi chuyển về dạng gián tiếp không đảo trợ động từ lên trước chủ ngữ.

15. They said that Peter can't make it to the final show. ->couldn't

Giải thích: do động từ tường thuật ở dạng quá khứ là "said" nên "can't" chuyển thành "couldn't"

16. My manager asked if I have finished my work yet. -> had

Giải thích: do động từ tường thuật ở dạng quá khứ là "asked" nên thì hiện tại hoàn thành trong câu trực tiếp chuyển thành thì quá khứ hoàn thành trong câu gián tiếp.

17. Peter said that he was going to get married following month. -> the following month

18. She asked me what had I done the previous day. ->I had

19. Now I just don't know whether to leave or stayed. -> stay

Giải thích: Động từ thứ hai, đứng sau "whether to" nên để ở dạng nguyên thể.

20. Mr. Brown said that he would get promotion by the end of this year. ->that

Giải thích: Trạng từ chỉ thời gian "this years" ở câu trực tiếp chuyển về "that years" ở câu gián tiếp

Bài 4 Chuyển những câu trực tiếp dưới đây thành câu gián tiếp.

16. Many doctor say: "Teenagers undergo many physical and mental changes during their puberty".

Many doctor say that teenagers undergo many physical and mental changes during their puberty.

17. Sometimes my mother tells me: "You don't have to be so tense".

Sometimes my mother tells me that I don't have to be so tense.

18. Peter said: "I am looking forward to my grandfather's gift".

Peter said he was looking forward to his grandfather's gift

19. "If I pass this test, my father will buy me a new skateboard" Peter said.

Peter said if he pass this test, his father would buy him a new skateboard.

20. I told my teacher: "I forgot to do my homework".

I told my teacher that I had forgotten to do my homework.

21. "Mr. Brown owns two cars and three houses". Jim said.

Jim said Mr. Brown owned two cars and three houses.

22. She said to me: "I can't do it by myself".

She said to me that she couldn't do it by herself.

23. My mother said: "I will go on a business trip next week".

My mother said that she would go on a business trip the following week.

24. My manager said: "Someone broke into our office yesterday".

My manager said that someone had broken into our office the previous day.

25. He told me: "You may have trouble if you don't do your homework".

He told me that I might have trouble if I didn't do my homework.

26. The singer said: "I started my career three years ago".

The singer said that he/she had started his/her career three years before.

27. Jim told me: "It is not my book, it's yours."

Jim told me it was not his book, it was mine.

28. "I have just received a postcard from my foreign friend." Ann said to me.

Ann said to me she had just received a postcard from her foreign friend.

29. "This story happened long ago." He said.

He said that story had happened long before.

30. Peter said: "I hope it will be sunny tomorrow."

Peter said he hoped it would be sunny the following day.

Bài 5: Chuyển những câu hỏi trực tiếp dưới đây thành câu gián tiếp.

11. Jim asked his girlfriend: "How many pairs of shoes do you have?"

Jim asked his girlfriend that how many pairs of shoes she had.

12. "Are you going to London next week?" Peter asked Jane.

Peter asked Jane whether she was going to London the following week.

13. "Have you done the laundry?" Mom asked my sister.

Mom asked my sister whether she had done the laundry.

14. "Does your brother live in London, Peter?" Jane asked.

Jane asked Peter whether his brother lived in London.

15. "What are you doing now?" Jim asked his sister.

Jim asked his sister what she was doing then.

16. "Did you enjoy the party last night?" my classmate asked me.

My classmate asked me whether I enjoyed the party the previous night.

17. My friends always ask me: "What genre of music do you like the most?"

My friends always ask me what genre of music I liked the most.

18. "What have you done to cope with your work stress?" My doctor asked me.

My doctor asked me what I had done to cope with my work stress.

19. "What do you often do if you are sad?" Jim asked me.

Jim asked me what I often did if I was sad.

20. Jim asked me: "Who did you run into yesterday?"

Jim asked me who I had run into the day before.

Bài 6. Chuyển những câu trực tiếp sau đây thành câu gián tiếp.

11. "You don't have to do this if you don't really want to". They said to me.

They said to me that I didn't have to do that if I didn't really want to.

12. "I saw Jim when I was walking home yesterday." He told me.

He told me that he saw Jim when he was walking home the day before.

13. "Will you forgive Jim if he apologizes to you?" Jane asked me.

Jane asked me if I would forgive Jim if he apologized to me.

14. "Peter has been a friends of mine for 3 years." I told Jane

I told Jane that Peter had been a friends of mine for 3 years

15. "Will be capable of winning this contest?" Jim wondered.

Jim wondered whether he would be capable of winning that contest

16. "There was a serious car accident right here last week" Josh said.

Josh said that there had been a serious car accident right there the previous week.

17. "I am frustrated that Jim forgot our date yesterday". Jane told me.

Jane told me she was frustrated that Jim had forgotten their date the day before.

18. "This is the first time I've been to NYC". Peter said.

Peter said that was the first time he had been to NYC.

19. Mr Brown told his wife: "Our children have grown up, so you don't have to care much about them".

Mr Brown told his wife their children had grown up, so she didn't have to care much about them.

20. "What will you do if you win a lottery?" Peter asked me.

Peter asked me what I would do if I won a lottery.

Bài 7: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

10. Jim/ always/ want/ know/ whether/ he/ should/ study/ abroad/ or/ not.

Jim always wants to know whether he should study abroad or not .

11. When/ I / be/ small/ I/ tell/ my mother/ I / want/ be/ superman.

When I was small, I told my mother that I wanted to be a superman

12. Jim/ be/ confused/ because/ he/ not/ sure/ what/ do/ now.

Jim is confused because he is not sure what to do now .

13. I / have/ no/ idea/ what/ they/ do/ at the moment.

I have no idea what they are doing at the moment.

14. Please / show/ me/ how/ get/ nearest/ post office.

Please show me how to get to the nearest post office.

15. Now/ we/ have to/ decide/ where/ go/ and/ what/ do/ tomorrow.

Now we have to decide where to go and what to do tomorrow .

16. You/ make/ up/ your/ mind/ where/ spend/ your/ summer/ yet?

Have you made up your mind where to spend your summer yet ?

17. I / cannot/ understand/ why/ Jim/ fail/ the/ final test.

I cannot understand why Jim failed the final test.

18. Yesterday, my teacher/ carefully/ explain/ how/ young/ birds/ learn/ to/ fly

Yesterday, my teacher carefully explained how the young birds learnt to fly.

Bài 8: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

8. B. prone (to sth): dễ mà phải chịu đựng cái gì

9. A. adolescence: tuổi vị thành niên

Adolescent: người ở tuổi vị thành niên

Adulthood: tuổi trưởng thành

Adult: người trưởng thành

10. A. well-aware: nhận thức tốt

11. B. contributes: có đóng góp vào việc gì

12. C. puberty: quá trình dậy thì

13. C. frustrated (at sth): tức giận

14. C. with (deal with): giải quyết

Bài 9: Đọc đoạn văn sau, điền T (True) trước câu trả lời có nội dung đúng với nội dung bài đọc, điền F (False) trước câu có nội dung không đúng với nội dung bài đọc.

 F 1. There are only changes in a boy's body during his puberty.

Dẫn chứng: He and his friends are experiencing puberty, an important phase of development of a person when **physical and mental changes** take place.

 F 2. Boys can always understand their changer properly without the guide of parents and other experienced adults.

Dẫn chứng: Boys in particular may find numerous changes within themselves which they sometimes **cannot understand properly without the guide** of parent and other experienced adults.

 F 3. When boys enter their puberty, they often lose interest in abstract concepts and subjects.

Dẫn chứng: . When boys enter their puberty, they often **start taking interest in abstract concepts** and subjects such as justice, politics and arts.

 F 4. Boys often plan their life before they enter puberty.

Dẫn chứng: They also **begin** to understand the world around them, **planning out a life for themselves**, having dreams and life goals to fulfill.

 T 5. Boys encounter anxiety and confusion during puberty.

Dẫn chứng: Along with a very new view of life and sense of self comes anxiety and confusion.

 T 6. Boys may start to smoke or drink because of their curiosity.

Dẫn chứng: For example, boys start to smoke or drink because they are curious and they think they are cool to do so.

 F 7. Boys only have bad experiences during adolescence.

Dẫn chứng: In short, this is a period of experiencing new things and new people, both the good and the bad.

 F 8. Force and punishment are highly advisable when dealing with boys in their puberty.

Dẫn chứng: Force and punishments are **not highly recommended** in this phase as adolescents tend to be rebellious.

UNIT 4

Bài 1: Hoàn thành các câu sau với cấu trúc “used to” và động từ trong ngoặc.

1. Do you know what (Jim/do) **Jim used to do** before he retired?
2. **Did Mary used to be** (Mary/be) a successful business woman before she went bankrupt?
3. My family (not/travel) **did not used to travel** during summer vacation but now we really enjoy it.
4. I wonder what (people/do) **people used to do** to celebrate the Harvest Festival in the past?
5. As a kid, Josh (have) **used to have** his grandfather pick him up from primary school.
6. This boy band (be) **used to be** popular before they disbanded.
7. When my grandmother was young, she (set off) **used to set off** for a foreign country almost every summer.
8. My mother says that she (not cope) **did not use to cope** with much work stress five years ago.
9. In the past, people in my village (raise) **used to raise** poultry or cattle to earn a living.
10. I can't believe my father (be) **used to be** considered a bad boy before he married my mother.
11. Who **did you use to confide** (you/confide) in when you was at your teenage?
12. They (not use) **did not use to use** fork and knife when they first moved to America.
13. Jim (not like) **did not use to like** me much when we were at school but now he is my husband.
14. My father (work) **used to work** very far from home before he found his current job.
15. Those men (suffer) **used to suffer** a lot before they finally succeeded in their business

Bài 2: Dựa vào những thông tin cho sẵn để viết các câu miêu tả những sự việc trong quá khứ mà bây giờ không còn làm nữa.

0. I saw many buffaloes in my hometown but I can't see many of them now.

-> **I used to see many buffaloes in my hometown.**

1. This was only a small company with several years of low profit but now it has changed a lot.

-> **This used to be only a small company with several years of low profit.**

2. Men were the breadwinner of the family and women depended greatly on men.

-> **Men used to be the breadwinner of the family and women used to depend greatly on men.**

3. My sister admitted that she lied sometimes in the past but now she didn't.

-> **My sister admitted that she used to lie sometimes in the past.**

4. Jim asked me what I preferred to do as a child that I no longer did now.

-> **Jim asked me what I used to prefer to do as a child.**

5. Who took care of you when you were a toddler?

-> **Who used to take care of you when you were a toddler?**

6. Jim wasn't interested in reading books when he was small but now he's really into it.

-> **Jim didn't used to be interested in reading books when he was small.**

7. I got all the attention from my parents before my little brother was born.

-> **I used to get all the attention from my parents before my little brother was born.**

8. Bungalows were very popular 6 years ago.

-> **Bungalows used to be very popular 6 years ago.**

Giải thích: Xác định đúng những thói quen, hành động hoặc trạng thái đã xảy ra thường xuyên trong quá khứ và đã kết thúc, không còn ở hiện tại và chia theo cấu trúc phù hợp.

Bài 3: Hoàn thành các câu sau với cấu trúc “used to” và các động từ cho sẵn.

Look	Eat	Own	Earn
Work	Be	Play	Live

1. My whole family **used to live** on my father's salary but now both of my parents work to support our family.
2. My brother **used to look** after me when my parents were at work.
3. In the past, women **used to be** expected to stay home, do household chores and farming instead of getting higher education.
4. Those farmers **used to work** hard but **(used to) earn** little money before they were instructed to apply technologies in their farming.
5. We (not) **didn't used to eat** out when but now we often do because we are sometime too busy to prepare a meal.
6. Women (not) **didn't used to play** an important role in the political field in the past 50 years.
7. My uncle **used to own** a sheep farm before he sold it to move to the city.

Bài 4: Chia động từ trong ngoặc sao cho thích hợp

1. Jane wish she (can/go) **could go** travelling at least once a year.
2. Jim wishes he (earn) **earned** more money so that he would live more comfortable.
3. My mother wishes she (not have) **didn't have** to work for extra hours.
4. The little boy wishes it (not rain) **wasn't/weren't raining** at the moment.
5. I wish I (be) **was/were** healthier so that I could play some extreme sports.
6. Tim is sad because he has lost his bike. He wishes his mother (buy) **bought** him a new one.
7. I wish someone (offer) **offered** me an opportunity to study abroad.
8. Jim is bored as he is doing his homework now. He wish he (do) **was/were not doing** his homework.
9. My father is an officer but he wishes he (be) **was/were** a famous singer.
10. My mother never let me go to school on my own. I wish she (let) **let** me go alone.

Giải thích:

- Câu ước với "wish" ở hiện tại, diễn tả ao ước hoàn cảnh hiện tại xảy ra theo chiều hướng khác đi ở hiện tại và tương lai. Cấu trúc: "S wish(es) + S + V-ed hoặc "S wish(es) + S + could + V".
- Câu ước diễn tả điều ước cho một sự việc ta mong muốn nó xảy ra ngay tại thời điểm nói. Cấu trúc: "S wish(es) + S + was/were + V-ing".

Bài 5: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. Old/ man/ wish/ his/ grandchild/ visit/ him/ more/ often.

The old man wishes his grandchild visited him more often.

2. I/ wish/ you/ can/ spend/ more/ time/ on/ study.

I wish you could spend more time on study.

3. They/ wish/ their/ team/ be/champion.

They wish their team was the champion.

4. I/ wish/ I/ have/ more/ friend/ and/ I/ not/ be/ lonely.

I wish I had more friend and I was not lonely.

5. Mary/ wish/ her/ parents/ not/ have/ go/ on/ business/ trips/ so/ often.

Mary wishes her parents did not have to go on business trips so often.

6. Many/ people/ wish/ they/ be/ wealthy/ but/ I/ do/ not.

Many people wish they were wealthy but I don't .

7. I/ wish/ my/ mother/ be/ less/ busy/ so that/ she/ have/ more/ time/ for/ me.

I wish my mother was less busy so that she had more time for me.

8. Jim/ wish/ his/ parents/ not/ expect/ too/ much/ from/ him.

Jim wishes his parents did not expect too much from him.

- Giải thích: Câu ước với "wish" ở hiện tại, diễn tả ao ước hoàn cảnh hiện tại xảy ra theo chiều hướng khác đi ở hiện tại và tương lai. Cấu trúc: " S wish(es) + S + V-ed hoặc "S wish(es) + S + could + V".

Bài 6: Dựa vào câu cho trước, viết câu thể hiện điều ước với "wish"

0. I don't have a computer now.

->**I wish I had a computer now.**

1. Jim's friend lives very far from him.

->**Jim wishes his friend didn't live very far from him.**

2. My friend cannot afford her favorite camera.

->**My friend wishes she/he could afford her favorite camera**

3. The teacher make us do a lot of homework.

->**We wish the teacher didn't make us do a lot of homework**

4. I can't sing as beautifully as my sister.

->**I wish I could sing as beautifully as my sister.**

5. My father is depressed that his favorite football team loses the ticket to the final.

->**My father wishes his favorite football team couldn't lost the ticket to the final.**

6. I don't have my own house at the present.

->**I wish I had my own house at the present.**

7. Mr. Brown is sad that there is no way he can get promotion this year.

->**Mr. Brown wishes he could get promotion this year**

8. Peter is annoyed because there is too much noise from his neighbor.

->**Peter wishes there was not too much noise from his neighbor**

Bài 7: Đánh dấu [V] trước câu đúng, đánh dấu [X] trước câu sai và sửa lại cho đúng.

_____ 1. Peter and Jane **wishes** they could see each other more often.
_____ **wish**

Giải thích: câu ở thì hiện tại đơn với chủ ngữ số nhiều "Peter and Jane" nên động từ " wish" không chia.

_____ 2. I wish Jim were able to deal with all the problems on his own.
_____ **câu đúng**

_____ 3. Mrs. Brown wishes her husband were home more often and **talks** to her more.
_____ **talked**

Giải thích: động từ " talked" vẫn diễn tả mong ước không có thật ở hiện tại nên chia ở dạng quá khứ.

_____ 4. They wish their work was less stressful and they **have** more time to relax.
_____ **had**

_____ 5. James wishes he had more money so that he could buy what he wants.
_____ **câu đúng**

_____ 6. I wish I **wasn't having** to travel a long distance to work every day.
_____ **didn't have**

Giải thích: với động từ " have to" ta không dùng dạng tiếp diễn.

_____ 7. They wish they **will** able to visit her foreign friend.
_____ **would**

Giải thích: trong câu điều ước ở hiện tại, mệnh đề sau wish phải chia ở quá khứ nên " will" chia về dạng quá khứ là " would"

_____ 8. I only wish they provided a larger playground for the kids.
_____ **câu đúng**

Bài 8: Sắp xếp những từ đã cho thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. you/ make/ Did/ any/ mistake/ use/ terrible/ to?

Did you use to make any terrible mistake?

Bạn có từng mắc lỗi nghiêm trọng nào không?

2. she/ run/ Mary/ could/ a/ into/ figure/ wishes/ famous.

Mary wishes she could run into a famous figure.

Mary ước rằng cô ấy có thể bắt gặp một người nổi tiếng.

3. I/ that/ used/ she/ believe/ doesn't/ to/ a/ be/ lawyer.

She doesn't believe that I used to be a lawyer.

Cô ấy không tin rằng tôi đã từng là một luật sư.

4. I/ would/ never/ wish/ wealthy/ a/ person/ I/ be.

I never wish I would be a wealthy person

Tôi không bao giờ ước tôi sẽ trở thành một người giàu có.

5. wish/ a/ My/ list/ sister/ and/ it/ to/ send/ Santa Claus/ used/ make/ to.

My sister used to make a wish list and send it to Santa Claus.

Chị gái tôi đã từng làm một danh sách các điều ước và gửi nó cho Santa Claus

6. you/ what/ Do/ Jim/ company/ to/ for/ used/ work/ know?

Do you know what company Jim used to work for?

Bạn có biết công ty nào mà Jim đã từng làm việc không?

7. English/ my/ that/ teacher/ simple/ wish/ used/ language/ us/ understand/ to/ for/ I.

I wish that my English teacher used simple language for us to understand.

Tôi ước rằng cô giáo tiếng anh của chúng tôi dùng ngôn ngữ đơn giản để chúng tôi có thể hiểu.

8. they/ They/ could/ wish/ their/ by/ speaking/ with/ talking/ foreigners/ improve/ skill.

They wish they could improve their speaking skill by talking with foreigners.

Họ ước rằng họ có thể cải thiện kỹ năng nói tiếng anh bằng việc nói chuyện với người nước ngoài.

Bài 9: Viết lại câu với những từ cho sẵn.

1. When I was a child, I liked watching cartoons but now I no longer like them.

->When I was a child, I used to like watching cartoons.

Giải thích: cấu trúc "used to" dùng để chỉ hành động thường xuyên xảy ra trong quá khứ mà bây giờ không còn làm nữa.

2. My brother is very lazy. I can't stand him anymore.

->I wish my brother was not very lazy.

3. I want to be a university student but I can't.

->I wish I was a university student.

4. When Jim was six, he dreamt of becoming a superhero but now he gives up on that dream.

->When Jim was six, he used to dream of becoming a superhero.

5. Mr. Brown never allows her daughter to go to the party although she always want to.

-> Mr. Brown's daughter wishes her father allowed her to go to the part.

6. My friend always regrets that he doesn't live in the same neighborhood as me.

-> My friend wishes he lived in the same neighborhood as me.

7. "What did you use to do in your free time as a child?" Mary asked me.

-> Mary asked me what I used to do in my free time as a child

8. I am frustrated because I am cleaning the mess Jim has made.

->I wish I wasn't cleaning the mess Jim has made.

BÀI 10: Hoàn thành các câu sau với dạng đúng của động từ cho sẵn.

Dye

Be

Be

Given

Ride

Have

Purchase

Play

Become

fly

1. We used to _____ **buy** _____ things from street vendors when we were small.

Chúng tôi đã từng mua đồ từ người bán hàng rong khi chúng tôi còn nhỏ.

2. In the past, Vietnamese women used to _____ **dye** _____ their teeth black.

Trong quá khứ, phụ nữ Việt Nam đã từng nhuộm răng đen

3. I wish there _____ **weren't** _____ so many natural disasters so that people would not suffer from their consequences.

Tôi ước không có nhiều thảm họa thiên nhiên để con người không phải gánh chịu những hậu quả của chúng.

4. No one in my class used to _____ **ride** _____ a buffalo like I did.

Không ai trong lớp tôi đã từng cưỡi trâu như tôi.

5. They didn't use to _____ **fly** _____ kites when they lived in the countryside.

Họ không từng thả diều khi họ sống ở vùng nông thôn

6. Extended families used to _____ **be** _____ very popular in Vietnam years ago.

Gia đình mở rộng thường rất phổ biến ở Việt Nam nhiều năm về trước

7. Jane wishes someone _____ **gave** _____ her a chance to do it over again.

Jane ước ai đó cho cô ấy một cơ hội để bắt đầu lại từ đầu

8. I wish I could became a well - known artist.

Tôi ước tôi có thể trở thành một nghệ sĩ nổi danh

9. Did your mother use to play the role of both mother and father when your father was away from home?

Có phải mẹ bạn đã từng đóng vai trò của cả người cha và người mẹ khi bố bạn vắng nhà không?

10. Tom wishes he (not) didn't have to learn at the moment.

Tôm ước cậu ấy không phải học lúc này.

Bài 11: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

- A. consumed: tiêu dùng B. presumed : cho rằng
C. resumed: bắt đầu, tiếp tục lại D. résumé : sơ yếu lý lịch
 - A. because B. despite C. due to = because of: bởi vì D. as
 - A. breadwinner: trụ cột về kinh tế B. pillar
C. strongest D. most important
 - A. didn't used to B. didn't use to C. used to D. use to
 - A. do B. did C. used to do D. didn't used to do
- Giải thích: động từ chia ở thì hiện tại vì câu nói đến hành động ở thời điểm hiện tại.
- A. Besides B. While C. However D. Instead: thay vào đó
 - A. Likewise B. For example: ví dụ như
C. Therefore D. Although
 - A. color B. dye : nhuộm C. make D. paint

Bài 12: Đọc đoạn văn sau, điền T (True) trước câu có chứa thông tin đúng với nội dung bài đọc. Điền F (False) trước câu có chứa thông tin không đúng với nội dung bài đọc. Điền NG (Not Given) trước câu có nội dung không đúng với nội dung bài đọc.

- F 1. Vietnam's educational system was only affected by Chinese.
Dẫn chứng: In the past, Vietnam educational system was under the influence of by many foreign culture
- NG 2. The earliest students in Vietnam received their education from the Chinese Buddhist clergy.
- T 3. The early examinations were held to recruit high mandarin officials.
Dẫn chứng: This influence is depicted in the early examinations held to recruit high mandarin officials.
- F 4. During the latter part of the 11th century, the National College was opened to every students.
Dẫn chứng: During the latter part of the 11th century, a National College was established for the education of sons of royalty and other high-ranking officials, which marked the beginning of Confucian education in Vietnam.
- NG 5. At the beginning of the 15th century, many Confucian-type schools were in operation only in leading centers.
- T 6. Those days, education was highly appreciated.
Dẫn chứng: Those days, education became the most cherished ideals
- T 7. The scholar was highly respected to and idolized.
Dẫn chứng: The scholar was looked up to and highly revered.

UNIT 5: WONDERS OF VIETNAM (KEY)

Bài 1: Gạch chân những lỗi sai trong câu và sửa lại cho đúng.

- It **reported** that the storm had destroyed more than 100 houses in that area. **Was reported**
- People are** thought that travelling is very costly. **It is**
- It was claimed that there **will** be financial support for the homeless. **Would**
- Did** it said that the building was reconstructed in 1967? **Was**
- Do people** believed that learning is a lifetime journey? **Is it**
- They aren't believe** that they will lose the competition. **It isn't believed**
- Was it **rumor** last year that Jane set off for Paris and never returned? **Rumored**
- It **is** claimed by the authorities last year that they would help the poor. **Was**

Bài 2: Sắp xếp các từ đã cho thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. believed / people / will / is / on / Mars / future / the / widely / It / that / live / in.
It is widely believed that people will live on Mars in the future.

2. that / £200 / was / was / it / reported / donated / build / to / park / local / the.

It was reported that £200 was donated to build the local park.

3. it / yesterday / that / Jim / would / meeting / to / come / the / Was / expected?

Was it expected that Jim would come to the meeting yesterday?

4. is / that / is / a / view / hotel / from / of / spectacular / the / It / claimed / there / mountain / that.

It is claimed that there is a spectacular view of the mountain from the hotel.

5. in / It / Vietnam / is / that / should / believed / rickshaw / by / travelling / try / tourists.

It is believed that tourists should try travelling by rickshaw in Vietnam.

6. that / that / there / many / cottages / It / many / was / rumored / picturesque / village / in.

It was rumored that there were many picturesque cottages in that village.

7. breathtaking / of / claimed / was / lake / that / could / be / scene / here / It / a / the / seen / from.

It was claimed that a breathtaking scene of the lake could be seen from there.

8. these / for / road / rumored / that / Is / trees / it / be / cut / down / construction / will.

Is it rumored that these trees will be cut down for road construction?

Bài 3: Chuyển những câu chủ động sang thành câu bị động.

1. They believe that Jim is going to study abroad.

Is it believed that Jim is going to study abroad.

2. People rumored that there was a ghost in that house.

It was rumored that there was a ghost in that house.

3. Someone said that Jane would be able to win the contest.

Is it said that Jane would be able to win the contest.

4. They claimed that everything they said was true.

Is it claimed that everything they said was true.

5. They reported that there was a serious accident on the main road.

It was reported that there was a serious accident on the main road.

6. They don't think that this camera costs that much.

It isn't thought that this camera costs that much.

7. Did they claim that they had managed to solve the problem?

Was it claimed that they had managed to solve the problem?

8. People didn't expect that the building collapsed after the storm.

It wasn't expected that the building collapsed after the storm

Bài 4: Dựa vào những từ cho trước, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. It / widely / believe / that / ghosts / really / exist.

It is widely believed that ghosts really exist.

2. It / rumor / last / year / that / group / of / gangster / destroy / part / of / the / building.

It was rumored that a group of gangsters destroyed part of the building.

3. It / report / that / there / be / increase / in / number / of / tourists / last / year.

It was reported that there was an increase in the number of tourists last year.

4. It / think / the winner / be / team / A / but / it / turn / out / to be / team B.

It was thought that the winner was team A but it turned out to be team B.

5. It / claim / by / local / authorities / that / community house / build / next / year.

It is claimed by the local authorities that the community house will be built next year.

6. It / forecast / that / terrible / storm / come.

It is forecast that a terrible storm is coming.

7. It / tell / Jim / take / gap / year / after / he / finish / high / school.

It was told that Jim took a gap year after he (had) finished high school.

8. It / believe / national / heritages / need / preserve.

It is believed that national heritages need preserving.

Bài 5: Khoanh tròn đáp án đúng.

1. My father suggested that I (took / **take**) an English course this year.

2. My brother suggested (**playing** / to play) cards while waiting for our mother.

3. The doctor suggests that Jim (**do** / does) more exercises to keep fit.
4. Mr. Brown suggests that his son (doing / **do**) his homework before hanging out with friends.
5. Jane suggested (should hold / **holding**) a party next week.
6. Peter suggested that I (changed / **change**) my sandals into rain boots because it was raining outside.
7. The mayor suggests that there (**should be** / was) more trees along the main road.
8. I suggested (we took / **taking**) part in the competition because of the huge prize.
9. Does Mr. Brown suggest that Peter (goes / **go**) to school on his own.
10. My professor suggested that I (**should not choose** / not choose) that course for the next semester.

Bài 6: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

1. They suggest that you (keep) **should keep / keep** working hard to achieve your goal.
2. Peter suggested that Jane (not spend) **shouldn't spend** too much time on computer.
3. My friend suggested (not take) **not taking** the dog for a walk as it was snowing outside.
4. The bookseller suggested his customer (buy) **should buy / buy** the newly released book a famous author.
5. My teacher suggests that we (use) **should use / use** paperback dictionary to look up new words instead of using online dictionary.
6. It is suggested that children (learn) **should learn / learn** a foreign language at an early age.
7. The tour guide suggested that we (try) **should try / try** the local specialties.
8. My classmates suggest (throw) **throwing** a party to celebrate the Teacher's Day.

Bài 7: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. My neighbor / suggest / have / dinner / together.
My neighbor suggested having dinner together.
2. My father / suggest / my sister / visit / my grandparent / more / often.
My father suggested (that) my sister (should) visit my grandparent more often.
3. They / suggest / there / be / more / streetlight / in / this / neighborhood.
They suggested (that) there (should) be more streetlights in this neighborhood.
4. Mary / suggest / go / out / for / picnic / tomorrow.
Did Mary suggest going out for picnic tomorrow?
5. Salesman / suggest / Jim / choose / black / trousers.
The salesman suggested (that) Jim (should) choose the black trousers.
6. Peter / suggest / listen / to / radio / instead of / watch / TV.
Peter suggested listening to the radio instead of watching TV.
7. I / suggest / you / not / be / lazy / anymore.
I suggest (that) you should not be lazy any more.
8. They / suggest / sit / in / circle / and / share / stories / with / others.
They suggested sitting in a circle and sharing stories with others.

Bài 8: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong các câu sau và sửa lại cho đúng.

1. Jim suggested playing the piano and **sang**along.
2. The teacher suggested that I should rewrite my essay and **submitted** it later.
3. The instructor suggested that Jane **paid** more attention to his instructions.
4. Peter **suggest** playing badminton every day after school.
5. My team suggested **to work** together and come up with the solution.
6. Mr. Johnson suggested that there **was** an air-conditioner in this room.
7. I suggest the room **is** cleaned before I come back.
8. My parents suggested **me** go out and make some friends.

singing
submit
pay
suggests / suggested
working
(should) be
(should) be
(that) I

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 9: Chuyển những câu chủ động sau thành câu bị động.

1. No one expected that I would fail the final exam.
It wasn't expected that I would fail the final exam.
2. Do you think that they will have the chance to visit that place?
Is it thought that they will have the chance to visit that place?
3. They expected that this summer holiday would be swelteringly hot.
It was expected that this summer holiday would be swelteringly hot.
4. They reported that a vast area of forest in my hometown was destroyed.

It was reported that a vast area of forest in my hometown was destroyed.

5. Did they believe that the information was true?

Was it believed that the information was true?

6. Did anyone hope that there would be a significant change in the standards of living?

Was it hoped that there would be a significant change in the standards of living?

7. They never believe that Peter and Jane will get married.

It is never believed that Peter and Jane will get married.

8. People know that there is no life on Mars.

It is known that there is no life on Mars.

Bài 10: Hoàn thành những câu sau với dạng đúng của những động từ cho sẵn.

Get	Hold	Visit	Buy
Go	Travel	Pay	Carry

1. My foreign friend suggested _____ **going** _____ sightseeing in the suburbs this weekend.

2. Mr. Brown suggested _____ **visiting** _____ the most famous tourist attractions in Vietnam this summer holiday.

3. My mother suggested that I _____ **(should) get** _____ back my energy after studying hard by going on a picnic.

4. Peter suggested that I _____ **(should) buy** _____ my children some bracelets as souvenir after my business trip to Chinese.

5. Mary suggested that we _____ **(should) travel** _____ to the South of Vietnam this summer.

6. Did the teacher suggest that we _____ **(should) carry** _____ a project on preserving wonders of Vietnam?

7. Peter suggests _____ **holding** _____ a small party to celebrate his friend's birthday tomorrow.

8. My uncle suggested that our family _____ **(should) pay** _____ a visit to Huong Pagoda.

Bài 11: Dựa vào những thông tin cho sẵn, hãy viết câu gợi ý với 'suggest'

0. 'Peter should learn English.' The teacher said.

The teacher suggested that Peter (should) learn English.

1. 'It's a good idea that you take a rest from work.' My sister said to me.

My sister suggested that I (should) take a rest from work.

2. 'How about going to the sea this weekend?' Tom asked.

Tom suggested going to the sea that weekend.

3. 'Jim, you should never play truant again.' Jane said.

Jane suggested that Jim should never play truant again.

4. 'Why don't we go out and enjoy the weather?' My mom said.

My mom suggested going out and enjoying the weather.

5. 'If you visit Hanoi, you should go to Hoan Kiem Lake.' My friend told me.

My friend suggested that I (should) go to Hoan Kiem Lake if I visited Hanoi.

6. 'Jane, why don't you finish your homework before going out?' James's mother said.

Jane's mother suggested that she (should) finish her homework before going out.

7. 'Let's work out the solution together!' Peter says.

Peter suggested working out the solution together.

8. My father advised me to take any opportunities that I had.

My father suggested that I (should) take any opportunities that I had.

Bài 12: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. appeals | B. attentions | C. attractions | D. attachments |
| 2. A. is listed | B. is listing | C. lists | D. listed |
| 3. A. But | B. Yet | C. Despite | D. In spite |
| 4. A. Story | B. Tale | C. Fable | D. Legend |
| 5. A. defeat | B. defeated | C. defeating | D. are defeated |
| 6. A. went | B. scattered | C. turned | D. mattered |
| 7. A. is believed | B. believes | C. was believed | D. believed |
| 8. A. into | B. out | C. off | D. on |

Bài 13: Đọc đoạn văn sau và trả lời câu hỏi.

1. In which part of the British Isles will the weather be driest on 10 March?

A. South East and Eastern England B. Central, Northwest, Northern and North East England.

- C. Southwest England and Wales. D. Central, Southwest and Northwest Scotland.
2. In general the pattern of weather across the British Isles on 10 March is that
A. rain will die out later in the day. **B. rain will increase during the day.**
C. it will rain on and off all day. D. it will rain steadily in most places.
3. Where will there be most rain during the day?
A. Southeast and Eastern England. B. Central, Northwest, Northern and Northeast England.
C. Southwest England and Wales. D. Northeast Scotland, Orkney, Shetland.
4. The temperature will not rise above 10°C in the following area:
A. Southeast and Eastern England. B. Central, North West, Northern and Northeast England.
C. Southwest England and Wales. **D. Central, Southern and Northwest Scotland.**
5. It appears that in general the weather on 11 March will be
A. very much the same. B. much wetter.
C. much warmer. **D. more sunny.**

UNIT 6: VIETNAM: THEN AND NOW

Bài 1: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc ở thời quá khứ hoàn thành.

- Before hanging out with friends, Jim (do) **had done** his homework.
- Peter told me that he (already finish) **had already finished** reading 'Harry Potter'.
- Mary said she (never be) **had never been** to Paris before.
- When we came to the movie theater, the film (start) **had started**.
- Where **had Jim been** (Jim / be) before you found him?
- Peter (travel) **had travelled** to 5 foreign countries on business trips before he retired.
- My mother (write) **had written** me a note before she left for work.
- I wish I (not attend) **had not attended** that meeting.
- Jim (read) **had read** all his books before he brought a new one yesterday.
- had you cleaned** (you / clean) your room before you went out?

Bài 2: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc ở thì quá khứ hoàn thành hoặc quá khứ đơn.

- Mr. Brown (come) **came** home as soon as he (finish) **had finished** his work.
- I (live) **had lived** in Texas for 4 years before I (move) **moved** to California.
- When Mr. Smith (wake) **woke** yesterday morning, breakfast (already be) **had already been** ready.
- Before I (get) **got** promotion, I (work) **had worked** very hard.
- Yesterday, my mother (pick) **had picked** me up from school before we (go) **went** shopping together.
- Our grandparents (tell) **told** us that he (serve) **had served** in the army in 1945.
- After having dinner with my boyfriend, I (go) **went** home.
- Yesterday (be) **was** the first time Jane (perform) **had performed** in front of such large audience.
- Peter (admit) **admitted** he (break) **had broken** my favorite vase the day before.
- What **had you done** (you / do) before you (come) **came** there?
- Yesterday I (feel) **felt** nervous as I (not prepare) **had not prepared** my presentation carefully.
- Did Peter come** (Peter / come) to see you after he (finish) **had finished** his work?
- Mary (prepare) **had prepared** the meal before she (invite) **invited** her new neighbor to have lunch with her.
- Before I (buy) **bought** a car, I (travel) **had travelled** by bus for nearly 5 years.
- As soon as Jane (see) **saw** Jim, she (storm) **stormed** out of the room.

Bài 3: Dựa vào các từ cho sẵn, hãy viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

- Before / Peter / go / university / he / take / gap / year.
Before Peter went to university, he had taken a gap year.
- Where / you / be / before / you / come / home.
Where had you been before you came home?
- There / be / many / trees / along / street / before / people / cut / them / down.
There had been many trees along the street before people cut them down.

4. Jim / be / very / upset / before / Mary / cheer / him / up.

Jim had been very upset before Mary cheered him up.

5. She / tell / me / yesterday / she / not / finish / her / assignment / yet.

She told me yesterday that she had not finished her assignment yet.

6. What / happen / after / Jim / propose / to / Jane?

What happened after Jim had proposed to Jane?

7. You / eat / dinner / before / you / come / here?

Had you eaten dinner before you came here?

8. Peter / travel / a lot / before / his leg / seriously / injure / in / accident.

Peter had travelled a lot before his leg was seriously injured in an accident.

Bài 4: Hoàn thành các câu sau bằng dạng đúng của các động từ cho sẵn.

Commute	Be	(Not) build	Suffer	Do
Evacuate	Cooperate	Try	Mushroom	Want

1. In the past, people _____ **had commuted** _____ by tram before it was replaced by other modern means of transport.

2. Our family _____ **had suffered** _____ from poverty before we received help from the local people.

3. There _____ **was** _____ only a slight increase in the amount of money we earned each month after I changed my job.

4. The service industry in our region _____ **had mushroomed** _____ before the recession.

5. They _____ **hadn't built** _____ any flyovers in our area before 2014.

6. Mary and Jane _____ **had cooperated** _____ closely in the project before they hated each other.

7. What _____ **had people done** _____ (people) to earn a living before they worked in that factory?

8. They _____ **had tried** _____ several times before they gave up on their dream.

9. The local authorities _____ **had evacuated** _____ people from the dangerous area before the flood came.

10. I (always) _____ **had always wanted** _____ to become a superman before I realized that superman wasn't real.

Bài 5: Dựa vào những từ cho trước viết câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. It / hard / Jim / do / this / task.

It is hard for Jim to do this task.

2. It / not / easy / me / pass / the / test.

It is not easy for me to pass the test.

3. It / challenging / you / change / your / job / now.

It is challenging for you to change your job now.

4. Mary / always / afraid / try / anything / new.

Mary is always afraid to try anything new.

5. You / confident / win / the / competition?

Are you confident to win the competition?

6. My mother / pleased / see / me / at / home / now.

My mother is pleased to see me at home now.

7. I / sorry / to / hear / that / you / have / accident / last week.

I am sorry to hear that you had an accident last week.

8. I / glad / you / come / to / my party.

I am glad that you come to my party.

9. It / not / surprising / Peter / be / best / student / in / his / class.

It is not surprising that Peter is the best student in his class.

10. I / convinced / Peter / be / right.

I am convinced that Peter is right.

Bài 6: Gạch chân lỗi sai trong câu và sửa lại cho đúng.

1. **I sure** that you have mistaken my pen for yours.

I am sure

2. Peter is not confident **presenting** his ideas to the class.

To present

3. It is impossible **that** a fish to climb a tree.

For

4. Is it possible for me **winning** this competition?

To win

5. Mr. Brown was relieved **hearing** his wife was not injured in the accident.

To hear

6. Are you certain that he **to be** the pickpocket?

Is

7. Peter **astonished** that he accidentally found his childhood toy.
8. It is difficult for you **pass** the test if you don't study hard.
9. Were they **be able** to swim across that river?
10. They **don't** aware that staying up late is bad for health.

Was astonished
To pass
Able
Aren't

Bài 7: Sắp xếp các từ đã cho thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. that / I / thankful / me / so / homework / with / my / you / am / help.

I am so thankful that you help me with my homework.

2. difficult / It / English / has / learn / very / to / for / me / been.

It has been very difficult for me to learn English.

3. museum / me / the / it's / to / interesting / go / to / for.

It's interesting for me to go to the museum.

4. Peter / yesterday / was / party / his / to / came / glad / birthday / that / his / classmates.

Peter was glad that his classmates came to his birthday party yesterday.

5. boring / to / very / attend / be / that / must / It / meeting.

It must be very boring to attend that meeting.

6. It's / week / Jim / next / will / hard / house / his / to / move / believe / that.

It's hard to believe that Jim will move his house next week.

7. dangerous / play / It's / for / to / children / knife / with.

It's dangerous for children to play with knife.

8. sure / he / my / stolen / I / that / am / has / bike.

I am sure that he has stolen my bike.

Bài 8: Viết lại câu sao cho nghĩa không thay đổi.

1. Learning English is no difficult for me.

→ It is **not difficult for me to learn English.**

2. Jim was very confident when he said that he was the best.

→ Jim was very confident to **say that he was the best.**

3. Peter received a letter from his foreign friend yesterday. He was very happy about it.

→ Peter was very happy to **receive a letter from his foreign friend yesterday.**

4. I can't come to your party this weekend. I'm afraid.

→ I am afraid **that I can't come to your party this weekend.**

5. Doing gardening is not as easy as it looks.

→ It is not **easy to do gardening as it looks.**

6. I had no difficulty in making the last decision.

→ It was not **difficult for me to make the last decision.**

7. I think Peter is very happy. He has won a lottery.

→ I think Peter is very happy that **he has won a lottery.**

8. You were so lucky. You ran into a famous singer

→ You were so lucky to **run into a famous singer.**

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 9: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.

1. By the age of 25, Mr. Brown (own) **had owned** a large house and two expensive cars.

2. I (expect) **had expected** that Mary would come before she (tell) **told** me that she couldn't afford time.

3. It (be) **had been** very difficult for me (carry) **to carry** this project because my professor (give) **gave** some advice.

4. Yesterday, my mom (be) **was** very angry (find) **to find** out that I (not do) **hadn't done** the laundry yet.

5. **Had you stayed** (you / stay) in your room before your mother (find) **found** you?

6. By the time we (arrive) **arrived** at the station, the train (already leave) **had already left** for 15 minutes.

7. When Jim (come) **came** home, he (be) **was** angry (realize) **to realize** that someone (break) **had broken** into his house.

8. **Was it** (it / be) hard for you (understand) **to understand** the lesson yesterday?

9. As soon as the teacher (walk) **walked** into the classroom, she (be) **wast** surprised that her students (prepare) **had prepared** a birthday present for her.

10. Were you (you / be) confident that you would win the competition?

Bài 10: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, viết câu hoàn chỉnh

1. By / the / time / Peter / everyone / already / leave.

By the time Peter came, everyone had already left.

2. They / really / enjoy / themselves / at / party / before / they / have / go / home.

They had really enjoyed themselves at the party before they had to go home.

3. It / be / boring / me / learn / Japanese / before / I / have / new / teacher.

It had been boring for me to learn Japanese before I had a new teacher.

4. Yesterday / it / surprising / that / my sister / cook / dinner / before / I / come / home.

Yesterday it was surprising that my sister had cooked dinner.

5. I / annoyed / that / my brother / not / clean / the house / before / he / go / out.

I was annoyed that my brother hadn't cleaned the house before he went out.

6. You / happy / know / that / your mother / give / you / a special / gift / yesterday?

Were you happy to know that your mother gave you a special gift yesterday?

7. Peter / disappointed / know / his / final scores.

Peter was disappointed to know his final scores.

8. It / difficult / me / accept / the fact / that / I / not / get / that / job.

It was difficult for me to accept the fact that I didn't get that job.

Bài 11: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng

1. A. *for me* B. for my C. to me D. that I

2. A. has always been B. *had always been* C. was always D. is always

3. A. has passed B. had passed C. *passed* D. passes

4. A. when B. although C. *yet* D. instead

5. A. shared B. sharing C. shares D. *to share*

6. A. called B. *regarded* C. made D. turned

7. A. to B. on C. *for* D. that

8. A. *to* B. on C. than D. that

Bài 12: Đọc đoạn văn sau và trả lời câu hỏi.

1. Plastics of various kinds have been used for making bottles

A. since 1982

B. since the 1970s but only for large bottles

C. since the 1960s but not for liquids with gas in them

D. since companies like Coca Cola first tried them.

2. Why was ICI's Plastics Division interested in polyester for bottles?

A. The other things they make are not selling well.

B. Glass manufacturers cannot make enough new bottles.

C. They have factories which could be adapted to make it.

D. The price of oil keeps changing.

3. Why aren't all bottles now made of polyester?

A. The price of oil and plastic has risen

B. It is not suitable for containing gassy drinks

C. The public like traditional glass bottles

D. Shop keepers dislike re-useable bottles.

4. Manufacturers think polyester bottles are better than glass bottles because they _____.

A. Are cheaper

B. are more suited to small sizes

C. are more exciting to look at

D. do not break easily

5. Plastic containers for holding food in the same way as cans

A. have been used for many years

B. are an idea that interests the plastics companies

C. are possible, but only for hot food

D. are the first things being made in the new factories

